

# Ordinals and cardinals in HOL

Andrei Popescu & Dmitriy Traytel

## Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>More on Injections, Bijections and Inverses</b>	<b>5</b>
2.1	Purely functional properties . . . . .	5
2.2	Properties involving finite and infinite sets . . . . .	6
2.3	Properties involving Hilbert choice . . . . .	6
2.4	Other facts . . . . .	6
<b>3</b>	<b>Basics on Order-Like Relations</b>	<b>7</b>
3.1	The upper and lower bounds operators . . . . .	7
3.2	Properties depending on more than one relation . . . . .	19
<b>4</b>	<b>More on Well-Founded Relations</b>	<b>19</b>
4.1	Well-founded recursion via genuine fixpoints . . . . .	19
<b>5</b>	<b>Well-Order Relations</b>	<b>20</b>
5.1	Auxiliaries . . . . .	20
5.2	Well-founded induction and recursion adapted to non-strict well-order relations . . . . .	20
5.2.1	Properties of max2 . . . . .	21
5.2.2	Properties of minim . . . . .	21
5.2.3	Properties of sup . . . . .	22
5.2.4	Properties of successor . . . . .	23
5.2.5	Properties of order filters . . . . .	25
5.2.6	Other properties . . . . .	26
<b>6</b>	<b>Well-Order Embeddings</b>	<b>27</b>
6.1	Auxiliaries . . . . .	27
6.2	(Well-order) embeddings, strict embeddings, isomorphisms and order-compatible functions . . . . .	27
6.3	Uniqueness of embeddings . . . . .	28
<b>7</b>	<b>Order Union</b>	<b>29</b>

<b>8</b>	<b>Constructions on Wellorders</b>	<b>33</b>
8.1	Order filters versus restrictions and embeddings . . . . .	33
8.2	Ordering the well-orders by existence of embeddings . . . . .	34
8.3	Copy via direct images . . . . .	35
8.4	The maxim among a finite set of ordinals . . . . .	37
8.5	Limit and sucesor ordinals . . . . .	39
8.5.1	Successor and limit elements of an ordinal . . . . .	41
8.5.2	Well-order recursion with (zero), sucesor, and limit . . . . .	44
8.5.3	Well-order succ-lim induction . . . . .	45
8.6	Projections of wellorders . . . . .	46
<b>9</b>	<b>Ordinal Arithmetic</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>Cardinal-Order Relations</b>	<b>87</b>
10.1	Cardinal of a set . . . . .	88
10.2	Cardinals versus set operations on arbitrary sets . . . . .	89
10.3	Cardinals versus set operations involving infinite sets . . . . .	98
10.4	Cardinals versus lists . . . . .	98
10.5	Cardinals versus the finite powerset operator . . . . .	101
10.6	The cardinal $\omega$ and the finite cardinals . . . . .	103
10.6.1	First as well-orders . . . . .	103
10.6.2	Then as cardinals . . . . .	105
10.6.3	"Backward compatibility" with the numeric cardinal operator for finite sets . . . . .	107
10.7	The successor of a cardinal . . . . .	108
10.8	Others . . . . .	110
10.9	Infinite cardinals are limit ordinals . . . . .	114
10.10	Regular vs. stable cardinals . . . . .	116
<b>11</b>	<b>Cardinal Arithmetic</b>	<b>118</b>
11.1	Binary sum . . . . .	118
11.2	Product . . . . .	119
11.3	Exponentiation . . . . .	119
11.4	Powerset . . . . .	122
11.5	Inverse image . . . . .	123
11.6	Maximum . . . . .	123
<b>12</b>	<b>Extending Well-founded Relations to Wellorders</b>	<b>125</b>
12.1	Extending Well-founded Relations to Wellorders . . . . .	125
<b>13</b>	<b>Theory of Ordinals and Cardinals</b>	<b>129</b>

**Abstract**

We develop a basic theory of ordinals and cardinals in Isabelle/HOL, up to the point where some cardinality facts relevant for the “working mathematician” become available. Unlike in set theory, here we do not have at hand canonical notions of ordinal and cardinal. Therefore, here an ordinal is merely a well-order relation and a cardinal is an ordinal minim w.r.t. order embedding on its field.

**1 Introduction**

In set theory (under formalizations such as Zermelo-Fraenkel or Von Neumann-Bernays-Gödel), an *ordinal* is a special kind of well-order, namely one whose strict version is the restriction of the membership relation to a set. In particular, the field of a set-theoretic ordinal is a transitive set, and the non-strict version of an ordinal relation is set inclusion. Set-theoretic ordinals enjoy the nice properties of membership on transitive sets, while at the same time forming a complete class of representatives for well-orders (since any well-order turns out isomorphic to an ordinal). Moreover, the class of ordinals is itself transitive and well-ordered by membership as the strict relation and inclusion as the non-strict relation. Also knowing that any set can be well-ordered (in the presence of the axiom of choice), one then defines the *cardinal* of a set to be the smallest ordinal isomorphic to a well-order on that set. This makes the class of cardinals a complete set of representatives for the intuitive notion of set cardinality.<sup>1</sup> The ability to produce *canonical well-orders* from the membership relation (having the aforementioned convenient properties) allows for a harmonious development of the theory of cardinals in set-theoretic settings. Non-trivial cardinality results, such as  $A$  being equipollent to  $A \times A$  for any infinite  $A$ , follow rather quickly within this theory.

However, a canonical notion of well-order is *not* available in HOL. Here, one has to do with well-order “as is”, but otherwise has all the necessary infrastructure (including Hilbert choice) to “climb” well-orders recursively and to well-order arbitrary sets.

The current work, formalized in Isabelle/HOL, develops the basic theory of ordinals and cardinals up to the point where there are inferred a collection of non-trivial cardinality facts useful for the “working mathematician”, among which:

---

<sup>1</sup>The “intuitive” cardinality of a set  $A$  is the class of all sets equipollent to  $A$ , i.e., being in bijection with  $A$ .

- Given any two sets (on any two given types)<sup>2</sup>, one is injectable in the other.
- If at least one of two sets is infinite, then their sum and their Cartesian product are equipollent to the larger of the two.
- The set of lists (and also the set of finite sets) with element from an infinite set is equipollent with that set.

Our development emulates the standard one from set-theory, but keeps everything *up to order isomorphism*. An (HOL) ordinal is merely a well-order. An *ordinal embedding* is an injective and order-compatible function which maps its source into an initial segment (i.e., order filter) of its target. Now, a *cardinal* (called in this work a *cardinal order*) is an ordinal minim w.r.t. the existence of embeddings among all well-orders on its field. After showing the existence of cardinals on any given set, we define the cardinal of a set  $A$ , denoted  $|A|$ , to be *some* cardinal order on  $A$ . This concept is unique only up to order isomorphism (denoted  $=o$ ), but meets its purpose: any two sets  $A$  and  $B$  (laying at potentially distinct types) are in bijection if and only if  $|A| =o |B|$ . Moreover, we also show that numeric cardinals assigned to finite sets<sup>3</sup> are *conservatively extended* by our general (order-theoretic) notion of cardinal. We study the interaction of cardinals with standard set-theoretic constructions such as powersets, products, sums and lists. These constructions are shown to preserve the “cardinal identity”  $=o$  and also to be monotonic w.r.t.  $\leq o$ , the ordinal embedding relation. By studying the interaction between these constructions, infinite sets and cardinals, we obtain the aforementioned results for “working mathematicians”.

For this development, we did not follow closely any particular textbook, and in fact are not aware of such basic theory of cardinals previously developed in HOL.<sup>4</sup> On the other hand, the set-theoretic versions of the facts proved here are folklore in set theory, and can be found, e.g., in the textbook [1]. Beyond taking care of some locality aspects concerning the spreading of our concepts throughout types, we have not departed much from the techniques used in set theory for establishing these facts – for instance, in the proof of one of our major theorems, *Card-order-Times-same-infinite* from Section 8.4,<sup>5</sup> we have essentially applied the technique described, e.g., in the proof of theorem 1.5.11 from [1], page 47.

Here is the structure of the rest of this document.

---

<sup>2</sup>Recall that, in HOL, a set on a type  $\alpha$  is modeled, just like a predicate, as a function from  $\alpha$  to `bool`.

<sup>3</sup>Numeric cardinals of finite sets are already formalized in Isabelle/HOL.

<sup>4</sup>After writing this formalization, we became aware of Paul Taylor’s membership-free development of the theory of ordinals [2].

<sup>5</sup>This theorem states that, for any infinite cardinal  $r$  on a set  $A$ ,  $|A \times A|$  is not larger than  $r$ .

The next three sections, 2-4, develop some mathematical prerequisites. In Section 2, a large collection of simple facts about injections, bijections, inverses, (in)finite sets and numeric cardinals are proved, making life easier for later, when proving less trivial facts. Section 3 introduces upper and lower bounds operators for order-like relations and studies their basic properties. Section 4 states some useful variations of well-founded recursion and induction principles.

Then come the major sections, 5-8. Section 5 defines and studies, in the context of a well-order relation, the notions of minimum (of a set), maximum (of two elements), supremum, successor (of a set), and order filter (i.e., initial segment, i.e., downward-closed set). Section 6 defines and studies (well-order) embeddings, strict embeddings, isomorphisms, and compatible functions. Section 7 deals with various constructions on well-orders, and with the relations  $\leq o$ ,  $< o$  and  $= o$  of well-order embedding, strict embedding, and isomorphism, respectively. Section 8 defines and studies cardinal order relations, the cardinal of a set, the connection of cardinals with set-theoretic constructs, the canonical cardinal of natural numbers and finite cardinals, the successor of a cardinal, as well as regular cardinals. (The latter play a crucial role in the development of a new (co)datatype package in HOL.)

Finally, section 9 provides an abstraction of the previous developments on cardinals, to provide a simpler user interface to cardinals, which in most of the cases allows to forget that cardinals are represented by orders and use them through defined arithmetic operators.

More informal details are provided at the beginning of each section, and also at the beginning of some of the subsections.

## References

- [1] M. Holz, K. Steffens, and E. Weitz. *Introduction to Cardinal Arithmetic*. Birkhäuser, 1999.
- [2] Paul Taylor. Intuitionistic sets and ordinals. *J. Symb. Log.*, 61(3):705–744, 1996.

## 2 More on Injections, Bijections and Inverses

```
theory Fun-More
  imports Main
begin
```

### 2.1 Purely functional properties

```
lemma bij-betw-diff-singl:
  assumes BIJ: bij-betw f A A' and IN: a ∈ A
```

shows *bij-betw*  $f$   $(A - \{a\})$   $(A' - \{f\ a\})$   
**proof** –  
 let  $?B = A - \{a\}$  let  $?B' = A' - \{f\ a\}$   
 have  $f\ a \in A'$  using *IN BIJ unfolding* *bij-betw-def* by *blast*  
 hence  $a \notin ?B \wedge f\ a \notin ?B' \wedge A = ?B \cup \{a\} \wedge A' = ?B' \cup \{f\ a\}$   
 using *IN* by *blast*  
 thus *?thesis* using *notIn-Un-bij-betw3*[*of a ?B f ?B'*] *BIJ* by *simp*  
**qed**

## 2.2 Properties involving finite and infinite sets

**lemma** *bij-betw-inv-into-RIGHT*:  
 assumes *BIJ*: *bij-betw*  $f$   $A$   $A'$  and *SUB*:  $B' \leq A'$   
 shows  $f\ ' (inv-into\ A\ f)\ ' B' = B'$   
 by (*metis* *BIJ SUB bij-betw-imp-surj-on image-inv-into-cancel*)

**lemma** *bij-betw-inv-into-RIGHT-LEFT*:  
 assumes *BIJ*: *bij-betw*  $f$   $A$   $A'$  and *SUB*:  $B' \leq A'$  and  
*IM*:  $(inv-into\ A\ f)\ ' B' = B$   
 shows  $f\ ' B = B'$   
 by (*metis* *BIJ IM SUB bij-betw-inv-into-RIGHT*)

**lemma** *bij-betw-inv-into-twice*:  
 assumes *bij-betw*  $f$   $A$   $A'$   
 shows  $\forall a \in A. inv-into\ A'\ (inv-into\ A\ f)\ a = f\ a$   
 by (*simp* *add: assms inv-into-inv-into-eq*)

## 2.3 Properties involving Hilbert choice

**lemma** *bij-betw-inv-into-LEFT*:  
 assumes *BIJ*: *bij-betw*  $f$   $A$   $A'$  and *SUB*:  $B \leq A$   
 shows  $(inv-into\ A\ f)\ '(f\ ' B) = B$   
 using *assms* *unfolding* *bij-betw-def* using *inv-into-image-cancel* by *force*

**lemma** *bij-betw-inv-into-LEFT-RIGHT*:  
 assumes *BIJ*: *bij-betw*  $f$   $A$   $A'$  and *SUB*:  $B \leq A$  and  
*IM*:  $f\ ' B = B'$   
 shows  $(inv-into\ A\ f)\ ' B' = B$   
 using *assms* *bij-betw-inv-into-LEFT*[*of f A A' B*] by *fast*

## 2.4 Other facts

**lemma** *atLeastLessThan-injective*:  
 assumes  $\{0 \ ..< m::nat\} = \{0 \ ..< n\}$   
 shows  $m = n$   
 using *assms* *atLeast0LessThan* by *force*

**lemma** *atLeastLessThan-injective2*:  
*bij-betw*  $f \{0 \dots m::nat\} \{0 \dots n\} \implies m = n$   
**using** *bij-betw-same-card* **by** *fastforce*

**lemma** *atLeastLessThan-less-eq*:  
 $(\{0 \dots m\} \leq \{0 \dots n\}) = ((m::nat) \leq n)$   
**by** *auto*

**lemma** *atLeastLessThan-less-eq2*:  
**assumes** *inj-on*  $f \{0 \dots (m::nat)\} f ' \{0 \dots m\} \leq \{0 \dots n\}$   
**shows**  $m \leq n$   
**by** (*metis* *assms* *card-inj-on-le* *card-lessThan* *finite-lessThan* *lessThan-atLeast0*)

**lemma** *atLeastLessThan-less*:  
 $(\{0 \dots m\} < \{0 \dots n\}) = ((m::nat) < n)$   
**by** *auto*

**end**

### 3 Basics on Order-Like Relations

**theory** *Order-Relation-More*  
**imports** *Main*  
**begin**

#### 3.1 The upper and lower bounds operators

**lemma** *aboveS-subset-above*:  $aboveS \ r \ a \leq above \ r \ a$   
**by**(*auto simp add: aboveS-def above-def*)

**lemma** *AboveS-subset-Above*:  $AboveS \ r \ A \leq Above \ r \ A$   
**by**(*auto simp add: AboveS-def Above-def*)

**lemma** *UnderS-disjoint*:  $A \ Int \ (UnderS \ r \ A) = \{\}$   
**by**(*auto simp add: UnderS-def*)

**lemma** *aboveS-notIn*:  $a \notin aboveS \ r \ a$   
**by**(*auto simp add: aboveS-def*)

**lemma** *Refl-above-in*:  $\llbracket Refl \ r; a \in Field \ r \rrbracket \implies a \in above \ r \ a$   
**by**(*auto simp add: refl-on-def above-def*)

**lemma** *in-Above-under*:  $a \in Field \ r \implies a \in Above \ r \ (under \ r \ a)$   
**by**(*auto simp add: Above-def under-def*)

**lemma** *in-Under-above*:  $a \in Field \ r \implies a \in Under \ r \ (above \ r \ a)$   
**by**(*auto simp add: Under-def above-def*)

**lemma** *in-UnderS-aboveS*:  $a \in \text{Field } r \implies a \in \text{UnderS } r (\text{aboveS } r a)$   
**by**(*auto simp add: UnderS-def aboveS-def*)

**lemma** *UnderS-subset-Under*:  $\text{UnderS } r A \leq \text{Under } r A$   
**by**(*auto simp add: UnderS-def Under-def*)

**lemma** *subset-Above-Under*:  $B \leq \text{Field } r \implies B \leq \text{Above } r (\text{Under } r B)$   
**by**(*auto simp add: Above-def Under-def*)

**lemma** *subset-Under-Above*:  $B \leq \text{Field } r \implies B \leq \text{Under } r (\text{Above } r B)$   
**by**(*auto simp add: Under-def Above-def*)

**lemma** *subset-AboveS-UnderS*:  $B \leq \text{Field } r \implies B \leq \text{AboveS } r (\text{UnderS } r B)$   
**by**(*auto simp add: AboveS-def UnderS-def*)

**lemma** *subset-UnderS-AboveS*:  $B \leq \text{Field } r \implies B \leq \text{UnderS } r (\text{AboveS } r B)$   
**by**(*auto simp add: UnderS-def AboveS-def*)

**lemma** *Under-Above-Galois*:  
 $\llbracket B \leq \text{Field } r; C \leq \text{Field } r \rrbracket \implies (B \leq \text{Above } r C) = (C \leq \text{Under } r B)$   
**by**(*unfold Above-def Under-def, blast*)

**lemma** *UnderS-AboveS-Galois*:  
 $\llbracket B \leq \text{Field } r; C \leq \text{Field } r \rrbracket \implies (B \leq \text{AboveS } r C) = (C \leq \text{UnderS } r B)$   
**by**(*unfold AboveS-def UnderS-def, blast*)

**lemma** *Refl-above-aboveS*:  
**assumes** *REFL*: *Refl* *r* **and** *IN*:  $a \in \text{Field } r$   
**shows**  $\text{above } r a = \text{aboveS } r a \cup \{a\}$   
**proof**(*unfold above-def aboveS-def, auto*)  
**show**  $(a, a) \in r$  **using** *REFL* *IN* *refl-on-def*[*of - r*] **by** *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *Linear-order-under-aboveS-Field*:  
**assumes** *LIN*: *Linear-order* *r* **and** *IN*:  $a \in \text{Field } r$   
**shows**  $\text{Field } r = \text{under } r a \cup \text{aboveS } r a$   
**proof**(*unfold under-def aboveS-def, auto*)  
**assume**  $a \in \text{Field } r$   $(a, a) \notin r$   
**with** *LIN* *IN* *order-on-defs*[*of - r*] *refl-on-def*[*of - r*] **show** *False* **by** *auto*  
**next**  
**fix** *b* **assume**  $b \in \text{Field } r$   $(b, a) \notin r$   
**with** *LIN* *IN* *order-on-defs*[*of Field r r*] *total-on-def*[*of Field r r*]  
**have**  $(a, b) \in r \vee a = b$  **by** *blast*  
**thus**  $(a, b) \in r$   
**using** *LIN* *IN* *order-on-defs*[*of - r*] *refl-on-def*[*of - r*] **by** *auto*  
**next**  
**fix** *b* **assume**  $(b, a) \in r$   
**thus**  $b \in \text{Field } r$



using *LIN* order-on-defs[*of - r*] refl-on-def[*of - r*] by blast  
 next  
 fix *b* assume  $b \neq a$  ( $a, b$ )  $\in r$   
 thus  $b \in \text{Field } r$   
 using *LIN* order-on-defs[*of Field r r*] refl-on-def[*of Field r r*] by blast  
 qed

**lemma** *Linear-order-underS-above-Field*:  
 assumes *LIN*: *Linear-order* *r* and *IN*:  $a \in \text{Field } r$   
 shows  $\text{Field } r = \text{underS } r \ a \cup \text{above } r \ a$   
**proof**(*unfold underS-def above-def, auto*)  
 assume  $a \in \text{Field } r$  ( $a, a$ )  $\notin r$   
 with *LIN* *IN* order-on-defs[*of - r*] refl-on-def[*of - r*]  
 show *False* by metis  
 next  
 fix *b* assume  $b \in \text{Field } r$  ( $a, b$ )  $\notin r$   
 with *LIN* *IN* order-on-defs[*of Field r r*] total-on-def[*of Field r r*]  
 have  $(b, a) \in r \vee b = a$  by blast  
 thus  $(b, a) \in r$   
 using *LIN* *IN* order-on-defs[*of - r*] refl-on-def[*of - r*] by auto  
 next  
 fix *b* assume  $b \neq a$  ( $b, a$ )  $\in r$   
 thus  $b \in \text{Field } r$   
 using *LIN* order-on-defs[*of - r*] refl-on-def[*of - r*] by blast  
 next  
 fix *b* assume ( $a, b$ )  $\in r$   
 thus  $b \in \text{Field } r$   
 using *LIN* order-on-defs[*of Field r r*] refl-on-def[*of Field r r*] by blast  
 qed

**lemma** *under-empty*:  $a \notin \text{Field } r \implies \text{under } r \ a = \{\}$   
 unfolding *Field-def under-def* by auto

**lemma** *Under-Field*:  $\text{Under } r \ A \leq \text{Field } r$   
 by(*unfold Under-def Field-def, auto*)

**lemma** *UnderS-Field*:  $\text{UnderS } r \ A \leq \text{Field } r$   
 by(*unfold UnderS-def Field-def, auto*)

**lemma** *above-Field*:  $\text{above } r \ a \leq \text{Field } r$   
 by(*unfold above-def Field-def, auto*)

**lemma** *aboveS-Field*:  $\text{aboveS } r \ a \leq \text{Field } r$   
 by(*unfold aboveS-def Field-def, auto*)

**lemma** *Above-Field*:  $\text{Above } r \ A \leq \text{Field } r$   
 by(*unfold Above-def Field-def, auto*)

**lemma** *Refl-under-Under*:

```

    assumes REFL: Refl r and NE:  $A \neq \{\}$ 
    shows  $\text{Under } r \ A = (\bigcap a \in A. \text{under } r \ a)$ 
  proof
    show  $\text{Under } r \ A \subseteq (\bigcap a \in A. \text{under } r \ a)$ 
      by(unfold Under-def under-def, auto)
  next
    show  $(\bigcap a \in A. \text{under } r \ a) \subseteq \text{Under } r \ A$ 
    proof(auto)
      fix x
      assume *:  $\forall xa \in A. x \in \text{under } r \ xa$ 
      hence  $\forall xa \in A. (x, xa) \in r$ 
        by (simp add: under-def)
      moreover
      {from NE obtain a where  $a \in A$  by blast
       with * have  $x \in \text{under } r \ a$  by simp
       hence  $x \in \text{Field } r$ 
       using under-Field[of r a] by auto
      }
      ultimately show  $x \in \text{Under } r \ A$ 
        unfolding Under-def by auto
    qed
  qed

```

```

lemma Refl-underS-UnderS:
  assumes REFL: Refl r and NE:  $A \neq \{\}$ 
  shows  $\text{UnderS } r \ A = (\bigcap a \in A. \text{underS } r \ a)$ 
  proof
    show  $\text{UnderS } r \ A \subseteq (\bigcap a \in A. \text{underS } r \ a)$ 
      by(unfold UnderS-def underS-def, auto)
  next
    show  $(\bigcap a \in A. \text{underS } r \ a) \subseteq \text{UnderS } r \ A$ 
    proof(auto)
      fix x
      assume *:  $\forall xa \in A. x \in \text{underS } r \ xa$ 
      hence  $\forall xa \in A. x \neq xa \wedge (x, xa) \in r$ 
        by (auto simp add: underS-def)
      moreover
      {from NE obtain a where  $a \in A$  by blast
       with * have  $x \in \text{underS } r \ a$  by simp
       hence  $x \in \text{Field } r$ 
       using underS-Field[of - r a] by auto
      }
      ultimately show  $x \in \text{UnderS } r \ A$ 
        unfolding UnderS-def by auto
    qed
  qed

```

```

lemma Refl-above-Above:
  assumes REFL: Refl r and NE:  $A \neq \{\}$ 

```

```

shows Above r A = ( $\bigcap a \in A. \text{above } r a$ )
proof
  show Above r A  $\subseteq$  ( $\bigcap a \in A. \text{above } r a$ )
    by(unfold Above-def above-def, auto)
next
  show ( $\bigcap a \in A. \text{above } r a$ )  $\subseteq$  Above r A
  proof(auto)
    fix x
    assume *:  $\forall xa \in A. x \in \text{above } r xa$ 
    hence  $\forall xa \in A. (xa, x) \in r$ 
      by (simp add: above-def)
    moreover
    {from NE obtain a where  $a \in A$  by blast
     with * have  $x \in \text{above } r a$  by simp
     hence  $x \in \text{Field } r$ 
      using above-Field[of r a] by auto
    }
    ultimately show  $x \in \text{Above } r A$ 
      unfolding Above-def by auto
  qed
qed

```

```

lemma Refl-aboveS-AboveS:
  assumes REFL: Refl r and NE:  $A \neq \{\}$ 
  shows AboveS r A = ( $\bigcap a \in A. \text{aboveS } r a$ )
proof
  show AboveS r A  $\subseteq$  ( $\bigcap a \in A. \text{aboveS } r a$ )
    by(unfold AboveS-def aboveS-def, auto)
next
  show ( $\bigcap a \in A. \text{aboveS } r a$ )  $\subseteq$  AboveS r A
  proof(auto)
    fix x
    assume *:  $\forall xa \in A. x \in \text{aboveS } r xa$ 
    hence  $\forall xa \in A. xa \neq x \wedge (xa, x) \in r$ 
      by (auto simp add: aboveS-def)
    moreover
    {from NE obtain a where  $a \in A$  by blast
     with * have  $x \in \text{aboveS } r a$  by simp
     hence  $x \in \text{Field } r$ 
      using aboveS-Field[of r a] by auto
    }
    ultimately show  $x \in \text{AboveS } r A$ 
      unfolding AboveS-def by auto
  qed
qed

```

```

lemma under-Under-singl: under r a = Under r {a}
  by(unfold Under-def under-def, auto simp add: Field-def)

```

**lemma** *underS-UnderS-singl*:  $\text{underS } r \ a = \text{UnderS } r \ \{a\}$   
**by**(*unfold UnderS-def underS-def, auto simp add: Field-def*)

**lemma** *above-Above-singl*:  $\text{above } r \ a = \text{Above } r \ \{a\}$   
**by**(*unfold Above-def above-def, auto simp add: Field-def*)

**lemma** *aboveS-AboveS-singl*:  $\text{aboveS } r \ a = \text{AboveS } r \ \{a\}$   
**by**(*unfold AboveS-def aboveS-def, auto simp add: Field-def*)

**lemma** *Under-decr*:  $A \leq B \implies \text{Under } r \ B \leq \text{Under } r \ A$   
**by**(*unfold Under-def, auto*)

**lemma** *UnderS-decr*:  $A \leq B \implies \text{UnderS } r \ B \leq \text{UnderS } r \ A$   
**by**(*unfold UnderS-def, auto*)

**lemma** *Above-decr*:  $A \leq B \implies \text{Above } r \ B \leq \text{Above } r \ A$   
**by**(*unfold Above-def, auto*)

**lemma** *AboveS-decr*:  $A \leq B \implies \text{AboveS } r \ B \leq \text{AboveS } r \ A$   
**by**(*unfold AboveS-def, auto*)

**lemma** *under-incl-iff*:  
**assumes** *TRANS*: *trans*  $r$  **and** *REFL*: *Refl*  $r$  **and** *IN*:  $a \in \text{Field } r$   
**shows**  $(\text{under } r \ a \leq \text{under } r \ b) = ((a,b) \in r)$   
**proof**  
**assume**  $(a,b) \in r$   
**thus**  $\text{under } r \ a \leq \text{under } r \ b$  **using** *TRANS*  
**by** (*auto simp add: under-incr*)  
**next**  
**assume**  $\text{under } r \ a \leq \text{under } r \ b$   
**moreover**  
**have**  $a \in \text{under } r \ a$  **using** *REFL IN*  
**by** (*auto simp add: Refl-under-in*)  
**ultimately show**  $(a,b) \in r$   
**by** (*auto simp add: under-def*)  
**qed**

**lemma** *above-decr*:  
**assumes** *TRANS*: *trans*  $r$  **and** *REL*:  $(a,b) \in r$   
**shows**  $\text{above } r \ b \leq \text{above } r \ a$   
**proof**(*unfold above-def, auto*)  
**fix**  $x$  **assume**  $(b,x) \in r$   
**with** *REL TRANS trans-def[of r]*  
**show**  $(a,x) \in r$  **by** *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *aboveS-decr*:  
**assumes** *TRANS*: *trans*  $r$  **and** *ANTISYM*: *antisym*  $r$  **and**  
*REL*:  $(a,b) \in r$

```

  shows  $\text{aboveS } r \ b \leq \text{aboveS } r \ a$ 
proof(unfold aboveS-def, auto)
  assume *:  $a \neq b$  and **:  $(b, a) \in r$ 
  with ANTISYM antisym-def[of r] REL
  show False by auto
next
  fix x assume  $x \neq b$   $(b, x) \in r$ 
  with REL TRANS trans-def[of r]
  show  $(a, x) \in r$  by blast
qed

lemma under-trans:
  assumes TRANS:  $\text{trans } r$  and
    IN1:  $a \in \text{under } r \ b$  and IN2:  $b \in \text{under } r \ c$ 
  shows  $a \in \text{under } r \ c$ 
proof-
  have  $(a, b) \in r \wedge (b, c) \in r$ 
  using IN1 IN2 under-def by fastforce
  hence  $(a, c) \in r$ 
  using TRANS trans-def[of r] by blast
  thus ?thesis unfolding under-def by simp
qed

lemma under-underS-trans:
  assumes TRANS:  $\text{trans } r$  and ANTISYM:  $\text{antisym } r$  and
    IN1:  $a \in \text{under } r \ b$  and IN2:  $b \in \text{underS } r \ c$ 
  shows  $a \in \text{underS } r \ c$ 
proof-
  have 0:  $(a, b) \in r \wedge (b, c) \in r$ 
  using IN1 IN2 under-def underS-def by fastforce
  hence 1:  $(a, c) \in r$ 
  using TRANS trans-def[of r] by blast
  have 2:  $b \neq c$  using IN2 underS-def by force
  have 3:  $a \neq c$ 
  proof
    assume  $a = c$  with 0 2 ANTISYM antisym-def[of r]
    show False by auto
  qed
  from 1 3 show ?thesis unfolding underS-def by simp
qed

lemma underS-under-trans:
  assumes TRANS:  $\text{trans } r$  and ANTISYM:  $\text{antisym } r$  and
    IN1:  $a \in \text{underS } r \ b$  and IN2:  $b \in \text{under } r \ c$ 
  shows  $a \in \text{underS } r \ c$ 
proof-
  have 0:  $(a, b) \in r \wedge (b, c) \in r$ 
  using IN1 IN2 under-def underS-def by fast
  hence 1:  $(a, c) \in r$ 

```

```

    using TRANS trans-def[of r] by fast
    have 2:  $a \neq b$  using IN1 underS-def by force
    have 3:  $a \neq c$ 
    proof
      assume  $a = c$  with 0 2 ANTISYM antisym-def[of r]
      show False by auto
    qed
    from 1 3 show ?thesis unfolding underS-def by simp
  qed

lemma underS-underS-trans:
  assumes TRANS: trans r and ANTISYM: antisym r and
    IN1:  $a \in \text{underS } r \ b$  and IN2:  $b \in \text{underS } r \ c$ 
  shows  $a \in \text{underS } r \ c$ 
  proof-
    have  $a \in \text{under } r \ b$ 
      using IN1 underS-subset-under by fast
    with assms under-underS-trans show ?thesis by fast
  qed

lemma above-trans:
  assumes TRANS: trans r and
    IN1:  $b \in \text{above } r \ a$  and IN2:  $c \in \text{above } r \ b$ 
  shows  $c \in \text{above } r \ a$ 
  proof-
    have  $(a,b) \in r \wedge (b,c) \in r$ 
      using IN1 IN2 above-def by fast
    hence  $(a,c) \in r$ 
      using TRANS trans-def[of r] by blast
    thus ?thesis unfolding above-def by simp
  qed

lemma above-aboveS-trans:
  assumes TRANS: trans r and ANTISYM: antisym r and
    IN1:  $b \in \text{above } r \ a$  and IN2:  $c \in \text{aboveS } r \ b$ 
  shows  $c \in \text{aboveS } r \ a$ 
  proof-
    have 0:  $(a,b) \in r \wedge (b,c) \in r$ 
      using IN1 IN2 above-def aboveS-def by fast
    hence 1:  $(a,c) \in r$ 
      using TRANS trans-def[of r] by blast
    have 2:  $b \neq c$  using IN2 aboveS-def by force
    have 3:  $a \neq c$ 
    proof
      assume  $a = c$  with 0 2 ANTISYM antisym-def[of r]
      show False by auto
    qed
    from 1 3 show ?thesis unfolding aboveS-def by simp
  qed

```

**lemma** *aboveS-above-trans*:  
**assumes** *TRANS*: *trans r* **and** *ANTISYM*: *antisym r* **and**  
*IN1*:  $b \in \text{aboveS } r \ a$  **and** *IN2*:  $c \in \text{above } r \ b$   
**shows**  $c \in \text{aboveS } r \ a$   
**proof**–  
**have**  $0$ :  $(a,b) \in r \wedge (b,c) \in r$   
**using** *IN1 IN2 above-def aboveS-def* **by** *fast*  
**hence**  $1$ :  $(a,c) \in r$   
**using** *TRANS trans-def[of r]* **by** *blast*  
**have**  $2$ :  $a \neq b$  **using** *IN1 aboveS-def* **by** *force*  
**have**  $3$ :  $a \neq c$   
**proof**  
**assume**  $a = c$  **with**  $0 \ 2$  *ANTISYM antisym-def[of r]*  
**show** *False* **by** *auto*  
**qed**  
**from**  $1 \ 3$  **show** *?thesis* **unfolding** *aboveS-def* **by** *simp*  
**qed**

**lemma** *aboveS-aboveS-trans*:  
**assumes** *TRANS*: *trans r* **and** *ANTISYM*: *antisym r* **and**  
*IN1*:  $b \in \text{aboveS } r \ a$  **and** *IN2*:  $c \in \text{aboveS } r \ b$   
**shows**  $c \in \text{aboveS } r \ a$   
**proof**–  
**have**  $b \in \text{above } r \ a$   
**using** *IN1 aboveS-subset-above* **by** *fast*  
**with** *assms above-aboveS-trans* **show** *?thesis* **by** *fast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *under-Under-trans*:  
**assumes** *TRANS*: *trans r* **and**  
*IN1*:  $a \in \text{under } r \ b$  **and** *IN2*:  $b \in \text{Under } r \ C$   
**shows**  $a \in \text{Under } r \ C$   
**proof**–  
**have**  $b \in \{u \in \text{Field } r. \forall x. x \in C \longrightarrow (u, x) \in r\}$   
**using** *IN2 Under-def* **by** *force*  
**hence**  $(a,b) \in r \wedge (\forall c \in C. (b,c) \in r)$   
**using** *IN1 under-def* **by** *fast*  
**hence**  $\forall c \in C. (a,c) \in r$   
**using** *TRANS trans-def[of r]* **by** *blast*  
**moreover**  
**have**  $a \in \text{Field } r$  **using** *IN1 unfolding Field-def under-def* **by** *blast*  
**ultimately**  
**show** *?thesis* **unfolding** *Under-def* **by** *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *underS-Under-trans*:  
**assumes** *TRANS*: *trans r* **and** *ANTISYM*: *antisym r* **and**  
*IN1*:  $a \in \text{underS } r \ b$  **and** *IN2*:  $b \in \text{Under } r \ C$

**shows**  $a \in \text{UnderS } r \ C$   
**proof**–  
**from**  $IN1$  **have**  $a \in \text{under } r \ b$   
**using**  $\text{underS-subset-under}[of \ r \ b]$  **by**  $\text{fast}$   
**with**  $\text{assms under-Under-trans}$   
**have**  $a \in \text{Under } r \ C$  **by**  $\text{fast}$

**moreover**  
**have**  $a \notin C$   
**proof**  
**assume**  $*$ ;  $a \in C$   
**have**  $1$ :  $b \neq a \wedge (a, b) \in r$   
**using**  $IN1 \text{ underS-def}[of \ r \ b]$  **by**  $\text{auto}$   
**have**  $\forall c \in C. (b, c) \in r$   
**using**  $IN2 \text{ Under-def}[of \ r \ C]$  **by**  $\text{auto}$   
**with**  $*$  **have**  $(b, a) \in r$  **by**  $\text{simp}$   
**with**  $1 \text{ ANTISYM antisym-def}[of \ r]$   
**show**  $\text{False}$  **by**  $\text{blast}$   
**qed**

**ultimately**  
**show**  $?thesis$  **unfolding**  $\text{UnderS-def}$   
**using**  $\text{Under-def}$  **by**  $\text{force}$   
**qed**

**lemma**  $\text{underS-UnderS-trans}$ :  
**assumes**  $\text{TRANS: trans } r$  **and**  $\text{ANTISYM: antisym } r$  **and**  
 $IN1: a \in \text{underS } r \ b$  **and**  $IN2: b \in \text{UnderS } r \ C$   
**shows**  $a \in \text{UnderS } r \ C$   
**proof**–  
**from**  $IN2$  **have**  $b \in \text{Under } r \ C$   
**using**  $\text{UnderS-subset-Under}[of \ r \ C]$  **by**  $\text{blast}$   
**with**  $\text{underS-Under-trans assms}$   
**show**  $?thesis$  **by**  $\text{force}$   
**qed**

**lemma**  $\text{above-Above-trans}$ :  
**assumes**  $\text{TRANS: trans } r$  **and**  
 $IN1: a \in \text{above } r \ b$  **and**  $IN2: b \in \text{Above } r \ C$   
**shows**  $a \in \text{Above } r \ C$   
**proof**–  
**have**  $(b, a) \in r \wedge (\forall c \in C. (c, b) \in r)$   
**using**  $IN1[\text{unfolded above-def}] \ IN2[\text{unfolded Above-def}]$  **by**  $\text{simp}$   
**hence**  $\forall c \in C. (c, a) \in r$   
**using**  $\text{TRANS trans-def}[of \ r]$  **by**  $\text{blast}$   
**moreover**  
**have**  $a \in \text{Field } r$  **using**  $IN1[\text{unfolded above-def}] \ \text{Field-def}$  **by**  $\text{fast}$   
**ultimately**  
**show**  $?thesis$  **unfolding**  $\text{Above-def}$  **by**  $\text{auto}$



qed

**lemma** *aboveS-Above-trans*:

**assumes** *TRANS*: *trans r* **and** *ANTISYM*: *antisym r* **and**

*IN1*:  $a \in \text{aboveS } r \ b$  **and** *IN2*:  $b \in \text{Above } r \ C$

**shows**  $a \in \text{AboveS } r \ C$

**proof**–

**from** *IN1* **have**  $a \in \text{above } r \ b$

**using** *aboveS-subset-above*[*of r b*] **by** *blast*

**with** *assms above-Above-trans*

**have**  $a \in \text{Above } r \ C$  **by** *fast*

**moreover**

**have**  $a \notin C$

**proof**

**assume** \*:  $a \in C$

**have** 1:  $b \neq a \wedge (b, a) \in r$

**using** *IN1 aboveS-def*[*of r b*] **by** *auto*

**have**  $\forall c \in C. (c, b) \in r$

**using** *IN2 Above-def*[*of r C*] **by** *auto*

**with** \* **have**  $(a, b) \in r$  **by** *simp*

**with** 1 *ANTISYM antisym-def*[*of r*]

**show** *False* **by** *blast*

qed

**ultimately**

**show** *?thesis unfolding AboveS-def*

**using** *Above-def* **by** *force*

qed

**lemma** *above-AboveS-trans*:

**assumes** *TRANS*: *trans r* **and** *ANTISYM*: *antisym r* **and**

*IN1*:  $a \in \text{above } r \ b$  **and** *IN2*:  $b \in \text{AboveS } r \ C$

**shows**  $a \in \text{AboveS } r \ C$

**proof**–

**from** *IN2* **have**  $b \in \text{Above } r \ C$

**using** *AboveS-subset-Above*[*of r C*] **by** *blast*

**with** *assms above-Above-trans*

**have**  $a \in \text{Above } r \ C$  **by** *force*

**moreover**

**have**  $a \notin C$

**proof**

**assume** \*:  $a \in C$

**have** 1:  $(b, a) \in r$

**using** *IN1 above-def*[*of r b*] **by** *auto*

**have**  $\forall c \in C. b \neq c \wedge (c, b) \in r$

**using** *IN2 AboveS-def*[*of r C*] **by** *auto*

**with** \* **have**  $b \neq a \wedge (a, b) \in r$  **by** *simp*

```

    with 1 ANTISYM antisym-def[of r]
    show False by blast
qed

ultimately
show ?thesis unfolding AboveS-def
  using Above-def by force
qed

lemma aboveS-AboveS-trans:
  assumes TRANS: trans r and ANTISYM: antisym r and
    IN1:  $a \in \text{aboveS } r \ b$  and IN2:  $b \in \text{AboveS } r \ C$ 
  shows  $a \in \text{AboveS } r \ C$ 
proof-
  from IN2 have  $b \in \text{Above } r \ C$ 
  using AboveS-subset-Above[of r C] by blast
  with aboveS-Above-trans assms
  show ?thesis by force
qed

lemma under-UnderS-trans:
  assumes TRANS: trans r and ANTISYM: antisym r and
    IN1:  $a \in \text{under } r \ b$  and IN2:  $b \in \text{UnderS } r \ C$ 
  shows  $a \in \text{UnderS } r \ C$ 
proof-
  from IN2 have  $b \in \text{Under } r \ C$ 
  using UnderS-subset-Under[of r C] by blast
  with assms under-Under-trans
  have  $a \in \text{Under } r \ C$  by force

  moreover
  have  $a \notin C$ 
  proof
    assume *:  $a \in C$ 
    have 1:  $(a,b) \in r$ 
    using IN1 under-def[of r b] by auto
    have  $\forall c \in C. b \neq c \wedge (b,c) \in r$ 
    using IN2 UnderS-def[of r C] by blast
    with * have  $b \neq a \wedge (b,a) \in r$  by blast
    with 1 ANTISYM antisym-def[of r]
    show False by blast
  qed

  ultimately
  show ?thesis unfolding UnderS-def Under-def by fast
qed

```

### 3.2 Properties depending on more than one relation

**lemma** *under-incr2*:

$r \leq r' \implies \text{under } r \ a \leq \text{under } r' \ a$

**unfolding** *under-def* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *underS-incr2*:

$r \leq r' \implies \text{underS } r \ a \leq \text{underS } r' \ a$

**unfolding** *underS-def* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *above-incr2*:

$r \leq r' \implies \text{above } r \ a \leq \text{above } r' \ a$

**unfolding** *above-def* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *aboveS-incr2*:

$r \leq r' \implies \text{aboveS } r \ a \leq \text{aboveS } r' \ a$

**unfolding** *aboveS-def* **by** *blast*

**end**

## 4 More on Well-Founded Relations

**theory** *Wellfounded-More*

**imports** *Main Order-Relation-More*

**begin**

### 4.1 Well-founded recursion via genuine fixpoints

**lemma** *adm-wf-unique-fixpoint*:

**fixes**  $r :: ('a * 'a) \text{ set}$  **and**

$H :: ('a \Rightarrow 'b) \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'b$  **and**

$f :: 'a \Rightarrow 'b$  **and**  $g :: 'a \Rightarrow 'b$

**assumes** *WF*:  $\text{wf } r$  **and** *ADM*:  $\text{adm-wf } r \ H$  **and** *fFP*:  $f = H \ f$  **and** *gFP*:  $g = H \ g$

**shows**  $f = g$

**proof**—

{**fix**  $x$

**have**  $f \ x = g \ x$

**proof**(*rule wf-induct[of r (λx. f x = g x)]*,

*auto simp add: WF*)

**fix**  $x$  **assume**  $\forall y. (y, x) \in r \longrightarrow f \ y = g \ y$

**hence**  $H \ f \ x = H \ g \ x$  **using** *ADM adm-wf-def[of r H]* **by** *auto*

**thus**  $f \ x = g \ x$  **using** *fFP* **and** *gFP* **by** *simp*

**qed**

}

**thus** *?thesis* **by** (*simp add: ext*)

qed

```
lemma wfrec-unique-fixpoint:
fixes r :: ('a * 'a) set and
  H :: ('a  $\Rightarrow$  'b)  $\Rightarrow$  'a  $\Rightarrow$  'b and
  f :: 'a  $\Rightarrow$  'b
assumes WF: wf r and ADM: adm-wf r H and
  fp: f = H f
shows f = wfrec r H
proof-
  have H (wfrec r H) = wfrec r H
  using assms wfrec-fixpoint[of r H] by simp
  thus ?thesis
  using assms adm-wf-unique-fixpoint[of r H wfrec r H] by simp
qed

end
```

## 5 Well-Order Relations

```
theory Wellorder-Relation
imports Wellfounded-More
begin
```

```
context wo-rel
begin
```

### 5.1 Auxiliaries

```
lemma PREORD: Preorder r
  using WELL order-on-defs[of - r] by auto

lemma PARORD: Partial-order r
  using WELL order-on-defs[of - r] by auto

lemma cases-Total2:
 $\bigwedge$  phi a b.  $\llbracket \{a,b\} \leq \text{Field } r; ((a,b) \in r - \text{Id} \implies \text{phi } a \text{ } b);$ 
 $((b,a) \in r - \text{Id} \implies \text{phi } a \text{ } b); (a = b \implies \text{phi } a \text{ } b) \rrbracket$ 
 $\implies \text{phi } a \text{ } b$ 
  using TOTALS by auto
```

### 5.2 Well-founded induction and recursion adapted to non-strict well-order relations

```
lemma worec-unique-fixpoint:
  assumes ADM: adm-wo H and fp: f = H f
  shows f = worec H
proof-
  have adm-wf (r - Id) H
```

**unfolding** *adm-wf-def*  
**using** *ADM adm-wo-def[of H] underS-def[of r]* **by** *auto*  
**hence**  $f = wfrec\ (r - Id)\ H$   
**using** *fp WF wfrec-unique-fixpoint[of r - Id H]* **by** *simp*  
**thus** *?thesis* **unfolding** *worec-def* .  
**qed**

### 5.2.1 Properties of max2

**lemma** *max2-iff*:  
**assumes**  $a \in Field\ r$  **and**  $b \in Field\ r$   
**shows**  $((max2\ a\ b,\ c) \in r) = ((a,c) \in r \wedge (b,c) \in r)$   
**proof**  
**assume**  $(max2\ a\ b,\ c) \in r$   
**thus**  $(a,c) \in r \wedge (b,c) \in r$   
**using** *assms max2-greater[of a b] TRANS trans-def[of r]* **by** *blast*  
**next**  
**assume**  $(a,c) \in r \wedge (b,c) \in r$   
**thus**  $(max2\ a\ b,\ c) \in r$   
**using** *assms max2-among[of a b]* **by** *auto*  
**qed**

### 5.2.2 Properties of minim

**lemma** *minim-Under*:  
 $\llbracket B \leq Field\ r; B \neq \{\} \rrbracket \implies minim\ B \in Under\ B$   
**by**(*auto simp add: Under-def minim-inField minim-least*)

**lemma** *equals-minim-Under*:  
 $\llbracket B \leq Field\ r; a \in B; a \in Under\ B \rrbracket$   
 $\implies a = minim\ B$   
**by**(*auto simp add: Under-def equals-minim*)

**lemma** *minim-iff-In-Under*:  
**assumes** *SUB*:  $B \leq Field\ r$  **and** *NE*:  $B \neq \{\}$   
**shows**  $(a = minim\ B) = (a \in B \wedge a \in Under\ B)$   
**proof**  
**assume**  $a = minim\ B$   
**thus**  $a \in B \wedge a \in Under\ B$   
**using** *assms minim-in minim-Under* **by** *simp*  
**next**  
**assume**  $a \in B \wedge a \in Under\ B$   
**thus**  $a = minim\ B$   
**using** *assms equals-minim-Under* **by** *simp*  
**qed**

**lemma** *minim-Under-under*:  
**assumes** *NE*:  $A \neq \{\}$  **and** *SUB*:  $A \leq Field\ r$   
**shows**  $Under\ A = under\ (minim\ A)$   
**proof**–

**have**  $\text{minim } A \in A$   
**using** *assms minim-in* **by** *auto*  
**then have**  $\text{Under } A \leq \text{under } (\text{minim } A)$   
**by** (*simp add: Under-decr under-Under-singl*)  
**moreover have**  $\text{under } (\text{minim } A) \leq \text{Under } A$   
**by** (*meson NE SUB TRANS minim-Under subset-eq under-Under-trans*)  
**ultimately show** *?thesis* **by** *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *minim-UnderS-underS*:  
**assumes** *NE:  $A \neq \{\}$*  **and** *SUB:  $A \leq \text{Field } r$*   
**shows**  $\text{UnderS } A = \text{underS } (\text{minim } A)$   
**proof** –  
**have**  $\text{minim } A \in A$   
**using** *assms minim-in* **by** *auto*  
**then have**  $\text{UnderS } A \leq \text{underS } (\text{minim } A)$   
**by** (*simp add: UnderS-decr underS-UnderS-singl*)  
**moreover have**  $\text{underS } (\text{minim } A) \leq \text{UnderS } A$   
**by** (*meson ANTISYM NE SUB TRANS minim-Under subset-eq underS-Under-trans*)  
**ultimately show** *?thesis* **by** *blast*  
**qed**

### 5.2.3 Properties of $\text{supr}$

**lemma** *supr-Above*:  
**assumes** *Above  $B \neq \{\}$*   
**shows**  $\text{supr } B \in \text{Above } B$   
**by** (*simp add: assms Above-Field minim-in supr-def*)

**lemma** *supr-greater*:  
**assumes** *Above  $B \neq \{\}$*   $b \in B$   
**shows**  $(b, \text{supr } B) \in r$   
**using** *assms Above-def supr-Above* **by** *fastforce*

**lemma** *supr-least-Above*:  
**assumes**  $a \in \text{Above } B$   
**shows**  $(\text{supr } B, a) \in r$   
**by** (*simp add: assms Above-Field minim-least supr-def*)

**lemma** *supr-least*:  
 $\llbracket B \leq \text{Field } r; a \in \text{Field } r; (\bigwedge b. b \in B \implies (b, a) \in r) \rrbracket$   
 $\implies (\text{supr } B, a) \in r$   
**by**(*auto simp add: supr-least-Above Above-def*)

**lemma** *equals-supr-Above*:  
**assumes**  $a \in \text{Above } B \wedge a'. a' \in \text{Above } B \implies (a, a') \in r$   
**shows**  $a = \text{supr } B$   
**by** (*simp add: assms Above-Field equals-minim supr-def*)

**lemma** *equals-supr*:  
 assumes *SUB*:  $B \leq \text{Field } r$  and *IN*:  $a \in \text{Field } r$  and  
   *ABV*:  $\bigwedge b. b \in B \implies (b, a) \in r$  and  
   *MINIM*:  $\bigwedge a'. \llbracket a' \in \text{Field } r; \bigwedge b. b \in B \implies (b, a') \in r \rrbracket \implies (a, a') \in r$   
 shows  $a = \text{supr } B$   
**proof**–  
 have  $a \in \text{Above } B$   
   unfolding *Above-def* using *ABV IN* by *simp*  
 moreover  
 have  $\bigwedge a'. a' \in \text{Above } B \implies (a, a') \in r$   
   unfolding *Above-def* using *MINIM* by *simp*  
 ultimately show *?thesis*  
   using *equals-supr-Above SUB* by *auto*  
**qed**

**lemma** *supr-inField*:  
 assumes *Above*  $B \neq \{\}$   
 shows  $\text{supr } B \in \text{Field } r$   
 by (*simp add: Above-Field assms minim-inField supr-def*)

**lemma** *supr-above-Above*:  
 assumes *SUB*:  $B \leq \text{Field } r$  and *ABOVE*: *Above*  $B \neq \{\}$   
 shows *Above*  $B = \text{above } (\text{supr } B)$   
 apply (*clarsimp simp: Above-def above-def set-eq-iff*)  
 by (*meson ABOVE FieldI2 SUB TRANS supr-greater supr-least transD*)

**lemma** *supr-under*:  
 assumes  $a \in \text{Field } r$   
 shows  $a = \text{supr } (\text{under } a)$   
**proof**–  
 have  $\text{under } a \leq \text{Field } r$   
   using *under-Field[of r]* by *auto*  
 moreover  
 have  $\text{under } a \neq \{\}$   
   using *assms Refl-under-in[of r] REFL* by *auto*  
 moreover  
 have  $a \in \text{Above } (\text{under } a)$   
   using *in-Above-under[of - r] assms* by *auto*  
 moreover  
 have  $\forall a' \in \text{Above } (\text{under } a). (a, a') \in r$   
   by (*auto simp: Above-def above-def REFL Refl-under-in assms*)  
 ultimately show *?thesis*  
   using *equals-supr-Above* by *auto*  
**qed**

## 5.2.4 Properties of successor

**lemma** *suc-least*:  
 $\llbracket B \leq \text{Field } r; a \in \text{Field } r; (\bigwedge b. b \in B \implies a \neq b \wedge (b, a) \in r) \rrbracket$

$\implies (suc\ B, a) \in r$   
**by**(*auto simp add: suc-least-AboveS AboveS-def*)

**lemma** *equals-suc*:

**assumes** *SUB*:  $B \leq Field\ r$  **and** *IN*:  $a \in Field\ r$  **and**

*ABVS*:  $\bigwedge b. b \in B \implies a \neq b \wedge (b, a) \in r$  **and**

*MINIM*:  $\bigwedge a'. \llbracket a' \in Field\ r; \bigwedge b. b \in B \implies a' \neq b \wedge (b, a') \in r \rrbracket \implies (a, a') \in$

*r*

**shows**  $a = suc\ B$

**proof**–

**have**  $a \in AboveS\ B$

**unfolding** *AboveS-def* **using** *ABVS IN* **by** *simp*

**moreover**

**have**  $\bigwedge a'. a' \in AboveS\ B \implies (a, a') \in r$

**unfolding** *AboveS-def* **using** *MINIM* **by** *simp*

**ultimately show** *?thesis*

**using** *equals-suc-AboveS SUB* **by** *auto*

**qed**

**lemma** *suc-above-AboveS*:

**assumes** *SUB*:  $B \leq Field\ r$  **and**

*ABOVE*:  $AboveS\ B \neq \{\}$

**shows**  $AboveS\ B = above\ (suc\ B)$

**using** *assms*

**proof**(*unfold AboveS-def above-def, auto*)

**fix** *a* **assume**  $a \in Field\ r \ \forall b \in B. a \neq b \wedge (b, a) \in r$

**with** *suc-least assms*

**show**  $(suc\ B, a) \in r$  **by** *auto*

**next**

**fix** *b* **assume**  $(suc\ B, b) \in r$

**thus**  $b \in Field\ r$

**by** (*simp add: FieldI2*)

**next**

**fix** *a b*

**assume** *1*:  $(suc\ B, b) \in r$  **and** *2*:  $a \in B$

**with** *assms suc-greater[of B a]*

**have**  $(a, suc\ B) \in r$  **by** *auto*

**thus**  $(a, b) \in r$

**using** *1 TRANS trans-def[of r]* **by** *blast*

**next**

**fix** *a*

**assume**  $(suc\ B, a) \in r$  **and** *2*:  $a \in B$

**thus** *False*

**by** (*metis ABOVE ANTISYM SUB antisymD suc-greater*)

**qed**

**lemma** *suc-singl-pred*:

**assumes** *IN*:  $a \in Field\ r$  **and** *ABOVE-NE*:  $aboveS\ a \neq \{\}$  **and**

*REL*:  $(a', suc\ \{a\}) \in r$  **and** *DIFF*:  $a' \neq suc\ \{a\}$



shows  $a' = a \vee (a', a) \in r$   
**proof** –  
 have \*:  $\text{succ } \{a\} \in \text{Field } r \wedge a' \in \text{Field } r$   
 using *WELL REL well-order-on-domain* **by** *metis*  
 {assume \*\*:  $a' \neq a$   
 hence  $(a, a') \in r \vee (a', a) \in r$   
 using *TOTAL IN \** **by** (*auto simp add: total-on-def*)  
 moreover  
 {assume  $(a, a') \in r$   
 with \*\* \* *assms WELL succ-least*[*of*  $\{a\}$   $a'$ ]  
 have  $(\text{succ } \{a\}, a') \in r$  **by** *auto*  
 with *REL DIFF \* ANTISYM antisym-def*[*of*  $r$ ]  
 have *False* **by** *simp*  
 }  
 ultimately have  $(a', a) \in r$   
 by *blast*  
 }  
 thus ?thesis **by** *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *under-underS-suc*:  
 assumes *IN*:  $a \in \text{Field } r$  **and** *ABV*:  $\text{aboveS } a \neq \{\}$   
 shows  $\text{underS } (\text{succ } \{a\}) = \text{under } a$   
**proof** –  
 have  $\text{AboveS } \{a\} \neq \{\}$   
 using *ABV aboveS-AboveS-singl*[*of*  $r$ ] **by** *auto*  
 then have 2:  $a \neq \text{succ } \{a\} \wedge (a, \text{succ } \{a\}) \in r$   
 using *suc-greater*[*of*  $\{a\}$   $a$ ] *IN* **by** *auto*  
 have  $\text{underS } (\text{succ } \{a\}) \leq \text{under } a$   
 using *ABV IN REFL Reft-under-in underS-E under-def wo-rel.suc-singl-pred*  
*wo-rel-axioms* **by** *fastforce*  
 moreover  
 have  $\text{under } a \leq \text{underS } (\text{succ } \{a\})$   
 by (*simp add: 2 ANTISYM TRANS subsetI underS-I under-underS-trans*)  
 ultimately show ?thesis **by** *blast*  
**qed**

### 5.2.5 Properties of order filters

**lemma** *ofilter-Under*[*simp*]:  
 assumes  $A \leq \text{Field } r$   
 shows *ofilter*(*Under*  $A$ )  
**by** (*clarsimp simp: ofilter-def*) (*meson TRANS Under-Field subset-eq under-Under-trans*)

**lemma** *ofilter-UnderS*[*simp*]:  
 assumes  $A \leq \text{Field } r$   
 shows *ofilter*(*UnderS*  $A$ )  
**by** (*clarsimp simp: ofilter-def*) (*meson ANTISYM TRANS UnderS-Field subset-eq under-UnderS-trans*)

**lemma** *ofilter-Int[simp]*:  $\llbracket \text{ofilter } A; \text{ ofilter } B \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{ofilter}(A \text{ Int } B)$   
**unfolding** *ofilter-def* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *ofilter-Un[simp]*:  $\llbracket \text{ofilter } A; \text{ ofilter } B \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{ofilter}(A \cup B)$   
**unfolding** *ofilter-def* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *ofilter-INTER*:  
 $\llbracket I \neq \{\}; \bigwedge i. i \in I \Longrightarrow \text{ofilter}(A \ i) \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{ofilter}(\bigcap i \in I. A \ i)$   
**unfolding** *ofilter-def* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *ofilter-Inter*:  
 $\llbracket S \neq \{\}; \bigwedge A. A \in S \Longrightarrow \text{ofilter } A \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{ofilter}(\bigcap S)$   
**unfolding** *ofilter-def* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *ofilter-Union*:  
 $(\bigwedge A. A \in S \Longrightarrow \text{ofilter } A) \Longrightarrow \text{ofilter}(\bigcup S)$   
**unfolding** *ofilter-def* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *ofilter-under-Union*:  
 $\text{ofilter } A \Longrightarrow A = \bigcup \{\text{under } a \mid a. a \in A\}$   
**using** *ofilter-under-UNION* [of *A*] **by** *auto*

### 5.2.6 Other properties

**lemma** *Trans-Under-regressive*:  
**assumes** *NE*:  $A \neq \{\}$  **and** *SUB*:  $A \leq \text{Field } r$   
**shows**  $\text{Under}(\text{Under } A) \leq \text{Under } A$   
**by** (*metis* *INT-E* *NE* *REFL* *Refl-under-Under* *SUB* *empty-iff minim-Under minim-Under-under subsetI*)

**lemma** *ofilter-suc-Field*:  
**assumes** *OF*:  $\text{ofilter } A$  **and** *NE*:  $A \neq \text{Field } r$   
**shows**  $\text{ofilter}(A \cup \{\text{suc } A\})$   
**by** (*metis* *NE* *OF* *REFL* *Refl-under-underS* *ofilter-underS-Field* *suc-underS under-ofilter*)

**declare**  
*minim-in[simp]*  
*minim-inField[simp]*  
*minim-least[simp]*  
*under-ofilter[simp]*  
*underS-ofilter[simp]*  
*Field-ofilter[simp]*

**end**

**abbreviation** *worec*  $\equiv$  *wo-rel.worec*

**abbreviation** *adm-wo*  $\equiv$  *wo-rel.adm-wo*  
**abbreviation** *isMinim*  $\equiv$  *wo-rel.isMinim*  
**abbreviation** *minim*  $\equiv$  *wo-rel.minim*  
**abbreviation** *max2*  $\equiv$  *wo-rel.max2*  
**abbreviation** *supr*  $\equiv$  *wo-rel.supr*  
**abbreviation** *suc*  $\equiv$  *wo-rel.suc*

**end**

## 6 Well-Order Embeddings

**theory** *Wellorder-Embedding*  
**imports** *Fun-More Wellorder-Relation*  
**begin**

### 6.1 Auxiliaries

**lemma** *UNION-bij-betw-ofilter*:  
**assumes** *WELL*: *Well-order r* **and**  
*OF*:  $\bigwedge i. i \in I \implies \text{ofilter } r \ (A \ i)$  **and**  
*BIJ*:  $\bigwedge i. i \in I \implies \text{bij-betw } f \ (A \ i) \ (A' \ i)$   
**shows**  $\text{bij-betw } f \ (\bigcup i \in I. A \ i) \ (\bigcup i \in I. A' \ i)$   
**proof**–  
**have** *wo-rel r* **using** *WELL* **by** (*simp add: wo-rel-def*)  
**hence**  $\bigwedge i \ j. \llbracket i \in I; j \in I \rrbracket \implies A \ i \leq A \ j \vee A \ j \leq A \ i$   
**using** *wo-rel.ofilter-linord[of r]* *OF* **by** *blast*  
**with** *WELL BIJ* **show** *?thesis*  
**by** (*auto simp add: bij-betw-UNION-chain*)  
**qed**

### 6.2 (Well-order) embeddings, strict embeddings, isomorphisms and order-compatible functions

**lemma** *embed-halfcong*:  
**assumes**  $\bigwedge a. a \in \text{Field } r \implies f \ a = g \ a$  **and** *embed r r' f*  
**shows** *embed r r' g*  
**by** (*smt (verit, del-insts) assms bij-betw-cong embed-def in-mono under-Field*)

**lemma** *embed-cong[fundef-cong]*:  
**assumes**  $\bigwedge a. a \in \text{Field } r \implies f \ a = g \ a$   
**shows**  $\text{embed } r \ r' \ f = \text{embed } r \ r' \ g$   
**by** (*metis assms embed-halfcong*)

**lemma** *embedS-cong[fundef-cong]*:  
**assumes**  $\bigwedge a. a \in \text{Field } r \implies f \ a = g \ a$   
**shows**  $\text{embedS } r \ r' \ f = \text{embedS } r \ r' \ g$   
**unfolding** *embedS-def* **using** *assms*  
*embed-cong[of r f g r']* *bij-betw-cong[of Field r f g Field r']* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *iso-cong*[*fundef-cong*]:  
**assumes**  $\bigwedge a. a \in \text{Field } r \implies f\ a = g\ a$   
**shows**  $\text{iso } r\ r'\ f = \text{iso } r\ r'\ g$   
**unfolding** *iso-def* **using** *assms*  
 $\text{embed-cong}[\text{of } r\ f\ g\ r']\ \text{bij-betw-cong}[\text{of } \text{Field } r\ f\ g\ \text{Field } r']\ \text{by } \text{blast}$

**lemma** *id-compat*: *compat*  $r\ r\ \text{id}$   
**by**(*auto simp add: id-def compat-def*)

**lemma** *comp-compat*:  
 $\llbracket \text{compat } r\ r'\ f; \text{compat } r'\ r''\ f \rrbracket \implies \text{compat } r\ r''\ (f' \circ f)$   
**by**(*auto simp add: comp-def compat-def*)

**corollary** *one-set-greater*:  
 $(\exists f::'a \Rightarrow 'a'. f\ 'A \leq A' \wedge \text{inj-on } f\ A) \vee (\exists g::'a' \Rightarrow 'a. g\ 'A' \leq A \wedge \text{inj-on } g\ A')$

**proof** –

**obtain**  $r$  **where** *well-order-on*  $A\ r$  **by** (*fastforce simp add: well-order-on*)  
**hence**  $1: A = \text{Field } r \wedge \text{Well-order } r$   
**using** *well-order-on-Well-order* **by** *auto*  
**obtain**  $r'$  **where**  $2: \text{well-order-on } A'\ r'$  **by** (*fastforce simp add: well-order-on*)  
**hence**  $2: A' = \text{Field } r' \wedge \text{Well-order } r'$   
**using** *well-order-on-Well-order* **by** *auto*  
**hence**  $(\exists f. \text{embed } r\ r'\ f) \vee (\exists g. \text{embed } r'\ r\ g)$   
**using**  $1\ 2$  **by** (*auto simp add: wellorders-totally-ordered*)  
**moreover**  
**{fix**  $f$  **assume** *embed*  $r\ r'\ f$   
**hence**  $f'A \leq A' \wedge \text{inj-on } f\ A$   
**using**  $1\ 2$  **by** (*auto simp add: embed-Field embed-inj-on*)  
**}**  
**moreover**  
**{fix**  $g$  **assume** *embed*  $r'\ r\ g$   
**hence**  $g'A' \leq A \wedge \text{inj-on } g\ A'$   
**using**  $1\ 2$  **by** (*auto simp add: embed-Field embed-inj-on*)  
**}**  
**ultimately show** *?thesis* **by** *blast*

**qed**

**corollary** *one-type-greater*:  
 $(\exists f::'a \Rightarrow 'a'. \text{inj } f) \vee (\exists g::'a' \Rightarrow 'a. \text{inj } g)$   
**using** *one-set-greater*[*of UNIV UNIV*] **by** *auto*

### 6.3 Uniqueness of embeddings

**lemma** *comp-embedS*:  
**assumes** *WELL*: *Well-order*  $r$  **and** *WELL'*: *Well-order*  $r'$  **and** *WELL''*: *Well-order*  $r''$   
**and** *EMB*: *embedS*  $r\ r'\ f$  **and** *EMB'*: *embedS*  $r'\ r''\ f'$   
**shows** *embedS*  $r\ r''\ (f' \circ f)$

```

using EMB EMB' WELL WELL' embedS-comp-embed embedS-def by blast

lemma iso-iff4:
  assumes WELL: Well-order r and WELL': Well-order r'
  shows  $iso\ r\ r'\ f = (embed\ r\ r'\ f \wedge embed\ r'\ r\ (inv\ into\ (Field\ r)\ f))$ 
  using assms embed-bothWays-iso
  by (unfold iso-def, auto simp add: inv-into-Field-embed-bij-betw)

lemma embed-embedS-iso:
   $embed\ r\ r'\ f = (embedS\ r\ r'\ f \vee iso\ r\ r'\ f)$ 
  unfolding embedS-def iso-def by blast

lemma not-embedS-iso:
   $\neg (embedS\ r\ r'\ f \wedge iso\ r\ r'\ f)$ 
  unfolding embedS-def iso-def by blast

lemma embed-embedS-iff-not-iso:
  assumes embed r r' f
  shows  $embedS\ r\ r'\ f = (\neg iso\ r\ r'\ f)$ 
  using assms unfolding embedS-def iso-def by blast

lemma iso-inv-into:
  assumes WELL: Well-order r and ISO: iso r r' f
  shows  $iso\ r'\ r\ (inv\ into\ (Field\ r)\ f)$ 
  by (meson ISO WELL bij-betw-inv-into inv-into-Field-embed-bij-betw iso-def iso-iff iso-iff2)

lemma embedS-or-iso:
  assumes WELL: Well-order r and WELL': Well-order r'
  shows  $(\exists g. embedS\ r\ r'\ g) \vee (\exists h. embedS\ r'\ r\ h) \vee (\exists f. iso\ r\ r'\ f)$ 
  by (metis WELL WELL' embed-embedS-iso embed-embedS-iso iso-iff4 wellorders-totally-ordered)

end

```

## 7 Order Union

```

theory Order-Union
  imports Main
begin

```

```

definition Osum :: 'a rel  $\Rightarrow$  'a rel  $\Rightarrow$  'a rel (infix  $\langle Osum \rangle$  60) where
   $r\ Osum\ r' = r \cup r' \cup \{(a, a').\ a \in Field\ r \wedge a' \in Field\ r'\}$ 

```

```

notation Osum (infix  $\langle \cup o \rangle$  60)

```

```

lemma Field-Osum:  $Field\ (r\ \cup o\ r') = Field\ r \cup Field\ r'$ 
  unfolding Osum-def Field-def by blast

```

```

lemma Osum-wf:

```

**assumes** *FLD*:  $\text{Field } r \text{ Int Field } r' = \{\}$  **and**  
 $WF$ :  $\text{wf } r$  **and**  $WF'$ :  $\text{wf } r'$   
**shows**  $\text{wf } (r \text{ Osum } r')$   
**unfolding** *wf-eq-minimal2* **unfolding** *Field-Osum*  
**proof**(*intro allI impI, elim conjE*)  
**fix**  $A$  **assume** \*:  $A \subseteq \text{Field } r \cup \text{Field } r'$  **and** \*\*:  $A \neq \{\}$   
**obtain**  $B$  **where**  $B\text{-def}$ :  $B = A \text{ Int Field } r$  **by** *blast*  
**show**  $\exists a \in A. \forall a' \in A. (a', a) \notin r \cup r'$   
**proof**(*cases B = \{\}*)  
**assume**  $\text{Case1}$ :  $B \neq \{\}$   
**hence**  $B \neq \{\} \wedge B \leq \text{Field } r$  **using**  $B\text{-def}$  **by** *auto*  
**then obtain**  $a$  **where**  $1$ :  $a \in B$  **and**  $2$ :  $\forall a1 \in B. (a1, a) \notin r$   
**using**  $WF$  **unfolding** *wf-eq-minimal2* **by** *blast*  
**hence**  $3$ :  $a \in \text{Field } r \wedge a \notin \text{Field } r'$  **using**  $B\text{-def FLD}$  **by** *auto*  
  
**have**  $\forall a1 \in A. (a1, a) \notin r \text{ Osum } r'$   
**proof**(*intro ballI*)  
**fix**  $a1$  **assume** \*\*:  $a1 \in A$   
**{assume**  $\text{Case11}$ :  $a1 \in \text{Field } r$   
**hence**  $(a1, a) \notin r$  **using**  $B\text{-def ** 2}$  **by** *auto*  
**moreover**  
**have**  $(a1, a) \notin r'$  **using**  $3$  **by** (*auto simp add: Field-def*)  
**ultimately have**  $(a1, a) \notin r \text{ Osum } r'$   
**using**  $3$  **unfolding** *Osum-def* **by** *auto*  
**}**  
**moreover**  
**{assume**  $\text{Case12}$ :  $a1 \notin \text{Field } r$   
**hence**  $(a1, a) \notin r$  **unfolding** *Field-def* **by** *auto*  
**moreover**  
**have**  $(a1, a) \notin r'$  **using**  $3$  **unfolding** *Field-def* **by** *auto*  
**ultimately have**  $(a1, a) \notin r \text{ Osum } r'$   
**using**  $3$  **unfolding** *Osum-def* **by** *auto*  
**}**  
**ultimately show**  $(a1, a) \notin r \text{ Osum } r'$  **by** *blast*  
**qed**  
**thus** *?thesis* **using**  $1 B\text{-def}$  **by** *auto*  
**next**  
**assume**  $\text{Case2}$ :  $B = \{\}$   
**hence**  $1$ :  $A \neq \{\} \wedge A \leq \text{Field } r'$  **using** \* \*\*  $B\text{-def}$  **by** *auto*  
**then obtain**  $a'$  **where**  $2$ :  $a' \in A$  **and**  $3$ :  $\forall a1' \in A. (a1', a') \notin r'$   
**using**  $WF'$  **unfolding** *wf-eq-minimal2* **by** *blast*  
**hence**  $4$ :  $a' \in \text{Field } r' \wedge a' \notin \text{Field } r$  **using**  $1 FLD$  **by** *blast*  
  
**have**  $\forall a1' \in A. (a1', a') \notin r \text{ Osum } r'$   
**proof**(*unfold Osum-def, auto simp add: 3*)  
**fix**  $a1'$  **assume**  $(a1', a') \in r$   
**thus** *False* **using**  $4$  **unfolding** *Field-def* **by** *blast*  
**next**  
**fix**  $a1'$  **assume**  $a1' \in A$  **and**  $a1' \in \text{Field } r$

thus *False* using *Case2 B-def* by *auto*  
 qed  
 thus *?thesis* using 2 by *blast*  
 qed  
 qed

**lemma** *Osum-Refl*:  
 assumes *FLD*: *Field r Int Field r' = {}* and  
   *REFL*: *Refl r* and *REFL'*: *Refl r'*  
 shows *Refl (r Osum r')*  
 using *assms*  
 unfolding *refl-on-def Field-Osum* unfolding *Osum-def* by *blast*

**lemma** *Osum-trans*:  
 assumes *FLD*: *Field r Int Field r' = {}* and  
   *TRANS*: *trans r* and *TRANS'*: *trans r'*  
 shows *trans (r Osum r')*  
 using *assms* unfolding *Osum-def trans-def disjoint-iff Field-iff* by *blast*

**lemma** *Osum-Preorder*:  
 $\llbracket \text{Field } r \text{ Int Field } r' = \{\}; \text{Preorder } r; \text{Preorder } r' \rrbracket \implies \text{Preorder } (r \text{ Osum } r')$   
 unfolding *preorder-on-def* using *Osum-Refl Osum-trans Restr-Field* by *blast*

**lemma** *Osum-antisym*:  
 assumes *FLD*: *Field r Int Field r' = {}* and  
   *AN*: *antisym r* and *AN'*: *antisym r'*  
 shows *antisym (r Osum r')*  
 using *assms* by (*auto simp: disjoint-iff antisym-def Osum-def Field-def*)

**lemma** *Osum-Partial-order*:  
 $\llbracket \text{Field } r \text{ Int Field } r' = \{\}; \text{Partial-order } r; \text{Partial-order } r' \rrbracket \implies$   
 $\text{Partial-order } (r \text{ Osum } r')$   
 unfolding *partial-order-on-def* using *Osum-Preorder Osum-antisym* by *blast*

**lemma** *Osum-Total*:  
 assumes *FLD*: *Field r Int Field r' = {}* and  
   *TOT*: *Total r* and *TOT'*: *Total r'*  
 shows *Total (r Osum r')*  
 using *assms*  
 unfolding *total-on-def Field-Osum* unfolding *Osum-def* by *blast*

**lemma** *Osum-Linear-order*:  
 $\llbracket \text{Field } r \text{ Int Field } r' = \{\}; \text{Linear-order } r; \text{Linear-order } r' \rrbracket \implies \text{Linear-order } (r$   
 $\text{Osum } r')$   
 by (*simp add: Osum-Partial-order Osum-Total linear-order-on-def*)

**lemma** *Osum-minus-Id1*:  
 assumes  $r \leq \text{Id}$   
 shows  $(r \text{ Osum } r') - \text{Id} \leq (r' - \text{Id}) \cup (\text{Field } r \times \text{Field } r')$

```

using assms by (force simp: Osum-def)

lemma Osum-minus-Id2:
  assumes  $r' \leq Id$ 
  shows  $(r \text{ Osum } r') - Id \leq (r - Id) \cup (Field\ r \times Field\ r')$ 
using assms by (force simp: Osum-def)

lemma Osum-minus-Id:
  assumes TOT: Total  $r$  and TOT': Total  $r'$  and
    NID:  $\neg (r \leq Id)$  and NID':  $\neg (r' \leq Id)$ 
  shows  $(r \text{ Osum } r') - Id \leq (r - Id) \text{ Osum } (r' - Id)$ 
  using assms Total-Id-Field by (force simp: Osum-def)

lemma wf-Int-Times:
  assumes  $A \text{ Int } B = \{\}$ 
  shows  $wf(A \times B)$ 
  unfolding wf-def using assms by blast

lemma Osum-wf-Id:
  assumes TOT: Total  $r$  and TOT': Total  $r'$  and
    FLD:  $Field\ r \text{ Int } Field\ r' = \{\}$  and
    WF:  $wf(r - Id)$  and WF':  $wf(r' - Id)$ 
  shows  $wf((r \text{ Osum } r') - Id)$ 
proof(cases  $r \leq Id \vee r' \leq Id$ )
  assume Case1:  $\neg (r \leq Id \vee r' \leq Id)$ 
  have  $Field(r - Id) \text{ Int } Field(r' - Id) = \{\}$ 
    using Case1 FLD TOT TOT' Total-Id-Field by blast
  thus ?thesis
    by (meson Case1 Osum-minus-Id Osum-wf TOT TOT' WF WF' wf-subset)
next
  have  $1: wf(Field\ r \times Field\ r')$ 
    using FLD by (auto simp add: wf-Int-Times)
  assume Case2:  $r \leq Id \vee r' \leq Id$ 
  moreover
  {assume Case21:  $r \leq Id$ 
    hence  $(r \text{ Osum } r') - Id \leq (r' - Id) \cup (Field\ r \times Field\ r')$ 
      using Osum-minus-Id1[of  $r\ r'$ ] by simp
    moreover
    {have  $Domain(Field\ r \times Field\ r') \text{ Int } Range(r' - Id) = \{\}$ 
      using FLD unfolding Field-def by blast
      hence  $wf((r' - Id) \cup (Field\ r \times Field\ r'))$ 
        using  $1\ WF'\ wf-Un[of\ Field\ r \times Field\ r'\ r' - Id]$ 
        by (auto simp add: Un-commute)
      }
    ultimately have ?thesis using wf-subset by blast
  }
moreover
  {assume Case22:  $r' \leq Id$ 
    hence  $(r \text{ Osum } r') - Id \leq (r - Id) \cup (Field\ r \times Field\ r')$ 
  }
}

```



```

    using Osum-minus-Id2[of  $r' r$ ] by simp
  moreover
  {have Range(Field  $r \times \text{Field } r'$ ) Int Domain( $r - \text{Id}$ ) = {}
    using FLD unfolding Field-def by blast
    hence  $\text{wf}((r - \text{Id}) \cup (\text{Field } r \times \text{Field } r'))$ 
      using 1 WF wf-Un[of  $r - \text{Id Field } r \times \text{Field } r'$ ]
      by (auto simp add: Un-commute)
  }
  ultimately have ?thesis using wf-subset by blast
}
ultimately show ?thesis by blast
qed

```

```

lemma Osum-Well-order:
  assumes FLD: Field  $r \text{ Int Field } r' = \{\}$  and
    WELL: Well-order  $r$  and WELL': Well-order  $r'$ 
  shows Well-order ( $r \text{ Osum } r'$ )
proof-
  have  $\text{Total } r \wedge \text{Total } r'$  using WELL WELL'
    by (auto simp add: order-on-defs)
  thus ?thesis using assms unfolding well-order-on-def
    using Osum-Linear-order Osum-wf-Id by blast
qed
end

```

## 8 Constructions on Wellorders

```

theory Wellorder-Constructions
  imports
    Wellorder-Embedding Order-Union
begin

```

```

unbundle cardinal-syntax

```

```

declare
  ordLeq-Well-order-simp[simp]
  not-ordLeq-iff-ordLess[simp]
  not-ordLess-iff-ordLeq[simp]
  Func-empty[simp]
  Func-is-emp[simp]

```

### 8.1 Order filters versus restrictions and embeddings

```

lemma ofilter-subset-iso:
  assumes WELL: Well-order  $r$  and
    OFA: ofilter  $r A$  and OFB: ofilter  $r B$ 
  shows  $(A = B) = \text{iso } (\text{Restr } r A) (\text{Restr } r B) \text{ id}$ 
  using assms by (auto simp add: ofilter-subset-embedS-iso)

```

## 8.2 Ordering the well-orders by existence of embeddings

**corollary** *ordLeq-refl-on*: *refl-on* {*r*. *Well-order r*} *ordLeq*  
**using** *ordLeq-reflexive* **unfolding** *ordLeq-def* *refl-on-def*  
**by** *blast*

**corollary** *ordLeq-trans*: *trans* *ordLeq*  
**using** *trans-def*[*of ordLeq*] *ordLeq-transitive* **by** *blast*

**corollary** *ordLeq-preorder-on*: *preorder-on* {*r*. *Well-order r*} *ordLeq*  
**by**(*auto simp add: preorder-on-def ordLeq-refl-on ordLeq-trans*)

**corollary** *ordIso-subset*: *ordIso*  $\subseteq$  {*r*. *Well-order r*}  $\times$  {*r*. *Well-order r*}  
**using** *ordIso-reflexive* **unfolding** *refl-on-def* *ordIso-def* **by** *blast*

**corollary** *ordIso-refl-on*: *refl-on* {*r*. *Well-order r*} *ordIso*  
**using** *ordIso-reflexive* **unfolding** *refl-on-def* *ordIso-def*  
**by** *blast*

**corollary** *ordIso-trans*: *trans* *ordIso*  
**using** *trans-def*[*of ordIso*] *ordIso-transitive* **by** *blast*

**corollary** *ordIso-sym*: *sym* *ordIso*  
**by** (*auto simp add: sym-def ordIso-symmetric*)

**corollary** *ordIso-equiv*: *equiv* {*r*. *Well-order r*} *ordIso*  
**using** *ordIso-subset* *ordIso-refl-on* *ordIso-sym* *ordIso-trans* **by** (*intro equivI*)

**lemma** *ordLess-Well-order-simp*[*simp*]:  
**assumes**  $r <_o r'$   
**shows** *Well-order r*  $\wedge$  *Well-order r'*  
**using** *assms* **unfolding** *ordLess-def* **by** *simp*

**lemma** *ordIso-Well-order-simp*[*simp*]:  
**assumes**  $r =_o r'$   
**shows** *Well-order r*  $\wedge$  *Well-order r'*  
**using** *assms* **unfolding** *ordIso-def* **by** *simp*

**lemma** *ordLess-irrefl*: *irrefl* *ordLess*  
**by**(*unfold irrefl-def, auto simp add: ordLess-irreflexive*)

**lemma** *ordLess-or-ordIso*:  
**assumes** *WELL*: *Well-order r* **and** *WELL'*: *Well-order r'*  
**shows**  $r <_o r' \vee r' <_o r \vee r =_o r'$   
**unfolding** *ordLess-def* *ordIso-def*  
**using** *assms* *embedS-or-iso*[*of r r'*] **by** *auto*

**corollary** *ordLeq-ordLess-Un-ordIso*:  
 $ordLeq = ordLess \cup ordIso$   
**by** (*auto simp add: ordLeq-iff-ordLess-or-ordIso*)

**lemma** *ordIso-or-ordLess*:

**assumes** *WELL*: *Well-order r* **and** *WELL'*: *Well-order r'*

**shows**  $r =_o r' \vee r <_o r' \vee r' <_o r$

**using** *assms ordLess-or-ordLeq ordLeq-iff-ordLess-or-ordIso* **by** *blast*

**lemmas** *ord-trans = ordIso-transitive ordLeq-transitive ordLess-transitive*

*ordIso-ordLeq-trans ordLeq-ordIso-trans*

*ordIso-ordLess-trans ordLess-ordIso-trans*

*ordLess-ordLeq-trans ordLeq-ordLess-trans*

**lemma** *ofilter-ordLeq*:

**assumes** *Well-order r* **and** *ofilter r A*

**shows** *Restr r A*  $\leq_o r$

**by** (*metis Well-order-Restr[of r A] assms ofilter-embed[of r A] ordLess-iff[of r Restr r A]*)

*ordLess-or-ordLeq[of r Restr r A]*)

**corollary** *under-Restr-ordLeq*:

*Well-order r*  $\implies$  *Restr r (under r a)*  $\leq_o r$

**by** (*auto simp add: ofilter-ordLeq wo-rel.under-ofilter wo-rel-def*)

### 8.3 Copy via direct images

**lemma** *Id-dir-image*: *dir-image Id f*  $\leq$  *Id*

**unfolding** *dir-image-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *Un-dir-image*:

*dir-image (r1  $\cup$  r2) f* = (*dir-image r1 f*)  $\cup$  (*dir-image r2 f*)

**unfolding** *dir-image-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *Int-dir-image*:

**assumes** *inj-on f (Field r1  $\cup$  Field r2)*

**shows** *dir-image (r1 Int r2) f* = (*dir-image r1 f*) *Int* (*dir-image r2 f*)

**proof**

**show** *dir-image (r1 Int r2) f*  $\leq$  (*dir-image r1 f*) *Int* (*dir-image r2 f*)

**using** *assms unfolding dir-image-def inj-on-def* **by** *auto*

**next**

**show** (*dir-image r1 f*) *Int* (*dir-image r2 f*)  $\leq$  *dir-image (r1 Int r2) f*

**by** (*clarsimp simp: dir-image-def*) (*metis FieldI1 FieldI2 UnCI assms inj-on-def*)

**qed**

**lemma** *Osum-embed*:

**assumes** *FLD*: *Field r Int Field r' = {}* **and**

*WELL*: *Well-order r* **and** *WELL'*: *Well-order r'*

**shows** *embed r (r Osum r')* *id*

**proof**—

**have** 1: *Well-order* ( $r$  *Osum*  $r'$ )  
**using** *assms* **by** (*auto simp add: Osum-Well-order*)  
**moreover**  
**have** *compat*  $r$  ( $r$  *Osum*  $r'$ ) *id*  
**unfolding** *compat-def Osum-def* **by** *auto*  
**moreover**  
**have** *inj-on id* (*Field*  $r$ ) **by** *simp*  
**moreover**  
**have** *ofilter* ( $r$  *Osum*  $r'$ ) (*Field*  $r$ )  
**using** 1 *FLD*  
**by** (*auto simp add: wo-rel-def wo-rel.ofilter-def Osum-def under-def Field-iff disjoint-iff*)  
**ultimately show** *?thesis*  
**using** *assms* **by** (*auto simp add: embed-iff-compat-inj-on-ofilter*)  
**qed**

**corollary** *Osum-ordLeq*:  
**assumes** *FLD*: *Field*  $r$  *Int Field*  $r' = \{\}$  **and**  
*WELL*: *Well-order*  $r$  **and** *WELL'*: *Well-order*  $r'$   
**shows**  $r \leq_o r$  *Osum*  $r'$   
**using** *assms Osum-embed Osum-Well-order*  
**unfolding** *ordLeq-def* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *Well-order-embed-copy*:  
**assumes** *WELL*: *well-order-on*  $A$   $r$  **and**  
*INJ*: *inj-on*  $f$   $A$  **and** *SUB*:  $f \text{ ' } A \leq B$   
**shows**  $\exists r'$ . *well-order-on*  $B$   $r' \wedge r \leq_o r'$   
**proof**–  
**have** *bij-betw*  $f$   $A$  ( $f \text{ ' } A$ )  
**using** *INJ inj-on-imp-bij-betw* **by** *blast*  
**then obtain**  $r''$  **where** *well-order-on* ( $f \text{ ' } A$ )  $r''$  **and** 1:  $r =_o r''$   
**using** *WELL Well-order-iso-copy* **by** *blast*  
**hence** 2: *Well-order*  $r'' \wedge \text{Field } r'' = (f \text{ ' } A)$   
**using** *well-order-on-Well-order* **by** *blast*

**let**  $?C = B - (f \text{ ' } A)$   
**obtain**  $r'''$  **where** *well-order-on*  $?C$   $r'''$   
**using** *well-order-on* **by** *blast*  
**hence** 3: *Well-order*  $r''' \wedge \text{Field } r''' = ?C$   
**using** *well-order-on-Well-order* **by** *blast*

**let**  $?r' = r''$  *Osum*  $r'''$   
**have** *Field*  $r''$  *Int Field*  $r''' = \{\}$   
**using** 2 3 **by** *auto*  
**hence**  $r'' \leq_o ?r'$  **using** *Osum-ordLeq[of r'' r''']* 2 3 **by** *blast*  
**hence** 4:  $r \leq_o ?r'$  **using** 1 *ordIso-ordLeq-trans* **by** *blast*

**hence** *Well-order*  $?r'$  **unfolding** *ordLeq-def* **by** *auto*  
**moreover**

```

have Field ?r' = B using 2 3 SUB by (auto simp add: Field-Osum)
ultimately show ?thesis using 4 by blast
qed

```

## 8.4 The maxim among a finite set of ordinals

The correct phrasing would be “a maxim of ...”, as  $\leq_o$  is only a preorder.

```

definition isOmax :: 'a rel set  $\Rightarrow$  'a rel  $\Rightarrow$  bool
where
  isOmax R r  $\equiv$   $r \in R \wedge (\forall r' \in R. r' \leq_o r)$ 

```

```

definition omax :: 'a rel set  $\Rightarrow$  'a rel
where
  omax R == SOME r. isOmax R r

```

**lemma** *exists-isOmax*:

```

assumes finite R and  $R \neq \{\}$  and  $\forall r \in R. \text{Well-order } r$ 
shows  $\exists r. \text{isOmax } R r$ 

```

**proof** –

```

have finite R  $\implies R \neq \{\}$   $\longrightarrow (\forall r \in R. \text{Well-order } r) \longrightarrow (\exists r. \text{isOmax } R r)$ 
  apply (erule finite-induct) apply (simp add: isOmax-def)

```

```

proof (clarsimp)

```

```

  fix r :: ('a  $\times$  'a) set and R assume *: finite R and **:  $r \notin R$ 
  and ***: Well-order r and ****:  $\forall r \in R. \text{Well-order } r$ 
  and IH:  $R \neq \{\} \longrightarrow (\exists p. \text{isOmax } R p)$ 

```

```

  let ?R' = insert r R

```

```

  show  $\exists p'. (\text{isOmax } ?R' p')$ 

```

```

  proof (cases  $R = \{\}$ )

```

```

    case True

```

```

    thus ?thesis

```

```

      by (simp add: *** isOmax-def ordLeq-reflexive)

```

```

  next

```

```

    case False

```

```

    then obtain p where p: isOmax R p using IH by auto

```

```

    hence Well-order p using **** unfolding isOmax-def by simp

```

```

    then consider  $r \leq_o p \mid p \leq_o r$ 

```

```

      using *** ordLeq-total by auto

```

```

    then show ?thesis

```

```

    proof cases

```

```

      case 1

```

```

      then show ?thesis

```

```

        using p unfolding isOmax-def by auto

```

```

    next

```

```

      case 2

```

```

      then show ?thesis

```

```

        by (metis *** insert-iff isOmax-def ordLeq-reflexive ordLeq-transitive p)

```

```

    qed

```

```

  qed

```

```

qed

```

thus *?thesis* using *assms* by *auto*  
qed

**lemma** *omax-isOmax*:  
assumes *finite R* and  $R \neq \{\}$  and  $\forall r \in R.$  *Well-order r*  
shows *isOmax R (omax R)*  
unfolding *omax-def* using *assms*  
by(*simp add: exists-isOmax someI-ex*)

**lemma** *omax-in*:  
assumes *finite R* and  $R \neq \{\}$  and  $\forall r \in R.$  *Well-order r*  
shows *omax R*  $\in R$   
using *assms omax-isOmax* unfolding *isOmax-def* by *blast*

**lemma** *Well-order-omax*:  
assumes *finite R* and  $R \neq \{\}$  and  $\forall r \in R.$  *Well-order r*  
shows *Well-order (omax R)*  
using *assms omax-in* by *blast*

**lemma** *omax-maxim*:  
assumes *finite R* and  $\forall r \in R.$  *Well-order r* and  $r \in R$   
shows  $r \leq_o \text{omax } R$   
using *assms omax-isOmax* unfolding *isOmax-def* by *blast*

**lemma** *omax-ordLeq*:  
assumes *finite R* and  $R \neq \{\}$  and  $\forall r \in R.$   $r \leq_o p$   
shows  $\text{omax } R \leq_o p$   
by (*meson assms omax-in ordLeq-Well-order-simp*)

**lemma** *omax-ordLess*:  
assumes *finite R* and  $R \neq \{\}$  and  $\forall r \in R.$   $r <_o p$   
shows  $\text{omax } R <_o p$   
by (*meson assms omax-in ordLess-Well-order-simp*)

**lemma** *omax-ordLeq-elim*:  
assumes *finite R* and  $\forall r \in R.$  *Well-order r*  
and  $\text{omax } R \leq_o p$  and  $r \in R$   
shows  $r \leq_o p$   
by (*meson assms omax-maxim ordLeq-transitive*)

**lemma** *omax-ordLess-elim*:  
assumes *finite R* and  $\forall r \in R.$  *Well-order r*  
and  $\text{omax } R <_o p$  and  $r \in R$   
shows  $r <_o p$   
by (*meson assms omax-maxim ordLeq-ordLess-trans*)

**lemma** *ordLeq-omax*:  
assumes *finite R* and  $\forall r \in R.$  *Well-order r*  
and  $r \in R$  and  $p \leq_o r$

**shows**  $p \leq_o \text{omax } R$   
**by** (*meson* *assms* *omax-maxim* *ordLeq-transitive*)

**lemma** *ordLess-omax*:  
**assumes** *finite* *R* **and**  $\forall r \in R. \text{Well-order } r$   
**and**  $r \in R$  **and**  $p <_o r$   
**shows**  $p <_o \text{omax } R$   
**by** (*meson* *assms* *omax-maxim* *ordLess-ordLeq-trans*)

**lemma** *omax-ordLeq-mono*:  
**assumes** *P*: *finite* *P* **and** *R*: *finite* *R*  
**and** *NE-P*:  $P \neq \{\}$  **and** *Well-R*:  $\forall r \in R. \text{Well-order } r$   
**and** *LEQ*:  $\forall p \in P. \exists r \in R. p \leq_o r$   
**shows**  $\text{omax } P \leq_o \text{omax } R$   
**by** (*meson* *LEQ* *NE-P* *P* *R* *Well-R* *omax-ordLeq* *ordLeq-omax*)

**lemma** *omax-ordLess-mono*:  
**assumes** *P*: *finite* *P* **and** *R*: *finite* *R*  
**and** *NE-P*:  $P \neq \{\}$  **and** *Well-R*:  $\forall r \in R. \text{Well-order } r$   
**and** *LEQ*:  $\forall p \in P. \exists r \in R. p <_o r$   
**shows**  $\text{omax } P <_o \text{omax } R$   
**by** (*meson* *LEQ* *NE-P* *P* *R* *Well-R* *omax-ordLess* *ordLess-omax*)

## 8.5 Limit and succesor ordinals

**lemma** *embed-underS2*:  
**assumes** *r*: *Well-order* *r* **and** *g*: *embed* *r* *s* *g* **and** *a*:  $a \in \text{Field } r$   
**shows**  $g \text{ ` underS } r \ a = \text{underS } s \ (g \ a)$   
**by** (*meson* *a* *bij-betw-def* *embed-underS* *g* *r*)

**lemma** *bij-betw-insert*:  
**assumes**  $b \notin A$  **and**  $f \ b \notin A'$  **and** *bij-betw* *f* *A* *A'*  
**shows** *bij-betw* *f* (*insert* *b* *A*) (*insert* (*f* *b*) *A'*)  
**using** *notIn-Un-bij-betw*[*OF* *assms*] **by** *auto*

**context** *wo-rel*  
**begin**

**lemma** *underS-induct*:  
**assumes**  $\bigwedge a. (\bigwedge a1. a1 \in \text{underS } a \implies P \ a1) \implies P \ a$   
**shows**  $P \ a$   
**by** (*induct* *rule*: *well-order-induct*) (*rule* *assms*, *simp* *add*: *underS-def*)

**lemma** *suc-underS'*:  
**assumes** *B*:  $B \subseteq \text{Field } r$  **and** *A*: *AboveS* *B*  $\neq \{\}$  **and** *b*:  $b \in B$   
**shows**  $b \in \text{underS } (\text{suc } B)$   
**using** *suc-AboveS*[*OF* *B* *A*] *b* **unfolding** *underS-def* *AboveS-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *underS-supr*:

```

assumes bA:  $b \in \text{underS } (\text{supr } A)$  and A:  $A \subseteq \text{Field } r$ 
shows  $\exists a \in A. b \in \text{underS } a$ 
proof(rule ccontr, simp)
  have bb:  $b \in \text{Field } r$  using bA unfolding underS-def Field-def by auto
  assume  $\forall a \in A. b \notin \text{underS } a$ 
  hence 0:  $\forall a \in A. (a, b) \in r$  using A bA unfolding underS-def
    using bb in-notinI[of b] by blast
  have (supr A, b)  $\in r$ 
    by (simp add: 0 A bb supr-least)
  thus False
    by (metis antisymD bA underS-E wo-rel.ANTISYM wo-rel-axioms)
qed

lemma underS-suc:
  assumes bA:  $b \in \text{underS } (\text{suc } A)$  and A:  $A \subseteq \text{Field } r$ 
  shows  $\exists a \in A. b \in \text{under } a$ 
proof(rule ccontr, simp)
  have bb:  $b \in \text{Field } r$  using bA unfolding underS-def Field-def by auto
  assume  $\forall a \in A. b \notin \text{under } a$ 
  hence 0:  $\forall a \in A. a \in \text{underS } b$  using A bA
    by (metis bb in-mono max2-def max2-greater mem-Collect-eq underS-I under-def)
  have (suc A, b)  $\in r$ 
    by (metis 0 A bb suc-least underS-E)
  thus False
    by (metis antisymD bA underS-E wo-rel.ANTISYM wo-rel-axioms)
qed

lemma (in wo-rel) in-underS-supr:
  assumes  $j \in \text{underS } i$  and  $i \in A$  and  $A \subseteq \text{Field } r$  and Above A  $\neq \{\}$ 
  shows  $j \in \text{underS } (\text{supr } A)$ 
  by (meson assms LIN in-mono supr-greater supr-inField underS-incl-iff)

lemma inj-on-Field:
  assumes A:  $A \subseteq \text{Field } r$  and f:  $\bigwedge a b. \llbracket a \in A; b \in A; a \in \text{underS } b \rrbracket \implies f a \neq f b$ 
  shows inj-on f A
  by (smt (verit) A f in-notinI inj-on-def subsetD underS-I)

lemma ofilter-init-seg-of:
  assumes ofilter F
  shows Restr r F initial-segment-of r
  using assms unfolding ofilter-def init-seg-of-def under-def by auto

lemma underS-init-seg-of-Collect:
  assumes  $\bigwedge j1 j2. \llbracket j2 \in \text{underS } i; (j1, j2) \in r \rrbracket \implies R j1 \text{ initial-segment-of } R j2$ 
  shows  $\{R j \mid j. j \in \text{underS } i\} \in \text{Chains init-seg-of}$ 
  using TOTALS assms
  by (clarsimp simp: Chains-def) (meson BNF-Least-Fixpoint.underS-Field)

```



**lemma** (in *wo-rel*) *Field-init-seg-of-Collect*:  
**assumes**  $\bigwedge j1\ j2. \llbracket j2 \in \text{Field } r; (j1, j2) \in r \rrbracket \implies R\ j1\ \text{initial-segment-of } R\ j2$   
**shows**  $\{R\ j \mid j. j \in \text{Field } r\} \in \text{Chains init-seg-of}$   
**using** *TOTALS* *assms* **by** (*auto simp: Chains-def*)

### 8.5.1 Successor and limit elements of an ordinal

**definition**  $\text{succ } i \equiv \text{succ } \{i\}$

**definition**  $\text{isSucc } i \equiv \exists j. \text{aboveS } j \neq \{\} \wedge i = \text{succ } j$

**definition**  $\text{zero} = \text{minim } (\text{Field } r)$

**definition**  $\text{isLim } i \equiv \neg \text{isSucc } i$

**lemma** *zero-smallest[simp]*:  
**assumes**  $j \in \text{Field } r$  **shows**  $(\text{zero}, j) \in r$   
**by** (*simp add: assms wo-rel.ofilter-linord wo-rel-axioms zero-def*)

**lemma** *zero-in-Field*: **assumes**  $\text{Field } r \neq \{\}$  **shows**  $\text{zero} \in \text{Field } r$   
**using** *assms* **unfolding** *zero-def* **by** (*metis Field-ofilter minim-in ofilter-def*)

**lemma** *leq-zero-imp[simp]*:  
 $(x, \text{zero}) \in r \implies x = \text{zero}$   
**by** (*metis ANTISYM WELL antisymD well-order-on-domain zero-smallest*)

**lemma** *leq-zero[simp]*:  
**assumes**  $\text{Field } r \neq \{\}$  **shows**  $(x, \text{zero}) \in r \longleftrightarrow x = \text{zero}$   
**using** *zero-in-Field[OF assms]* *in-notinI[of x zero]* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *under-zero[simp]*:  
**assumes**  $\text{Field } r \neq \{\}$  **shows**  $\text{under } \text{zero} = \{\text{zero}\}$   
**using** *assms* **unfolding** *under-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *underS-zero[simp,intro]*:  $\text{underS } \text{zero} = \{\}$   
**unfolding** *underS-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *isSucc-succ*:  $\text{aboveS } i \neq \{\} \implies \text{isSucc } (\text{succ } i)$   
**unfolding** *isSucc-def succ-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *succ-in-diff*:  
**assumes**  $\text{aboveS } i \neq \{\}$  **shows**  $(i, \text{succ } i) \in r \wedge \text{succ } i \neq i$   
**using** *assms suc-greater[of {i}]* **unfolding** *succ-def AboveS-def aboveS-def Field-def*  
**by** *auto*

**lemmas**  $\text{succ-in}[simp] = \text{succ-in-diff}[THEN\ conjunct1]$   
**lemmas**  $\text{succ-diff}[simp] = \text{succ-in-diff}[THEN\ conjunct2]$

```

lemma succ-in-Field[simp]:
  assumes aboveS i  $\neq \{\}$  shows succ i  $\in$  Field r
  using succ-in[OF assms] unfolding Field-def by auto

lemma succ-not-in:
  assumes aboveS i  $\neq \{\}$  shows (succ i, i)  $\notin$  r
  by (metis FieldI2 assms max2-equals1 max2-equals2 succ-diff succ-in)

lemma not-isSucc-zero:  $\neg$  isSucc zero
  by (metis isSucc-def leq-zero-imp succ-in-diff)

lemma isLim-zero[simp]: isLim zero
  by (metis isLim-def not-isSucc-zero)

lemma succ-smallest:
  assumes (i,j)  $\in$  r and i  $\neq$  j
  shows (succ i, j)  $\in$  r
  by (metis Field-iff assms empty-subsetI insert-subset singletonD suc-least succ-def)

lemma isLim-supr:
  assumes f: i  $\in$  Field r and l: isLim i
  shows i = supr (underS i)
proof(rule equals-supr)
  fix j assume j: j  $\in$  Field r and 1:  $\bigwedge j'. j' \in \text{underS } i \implies (j',j) \in r$ 
  show (i,j)  $\in$  r
  proof(intro in-notinI[OF - f j], safe)
    assume ji: (j,i)  $\in$  r j  $\neq$  i
    hence a: aboveS j  $\neq \{\}$  unfolding aboveS-def by auto
    hence i  $\neq$  succ j using l unfolding isLim-def isSucc-def by auto
    moreover have (succ j, i)  $\in$  r using succ-smallest[OF ji] by auto
    ultimately have succ j  $\in$  underS i unfolding underS-def by auto
    hence (succ j, j)  $\in$  r using 1 by auto
    thus False using succ-not-in[OF a] by simp
  qed
qed(use f underS-def Field-def in fastforce)+

definition pred i  $\equiv$  SOME j. j  $\in$  Field r  $\wedge$  aboveS j  $\neq \{\}$   $\wedge$  succ j = i

lemma pred-Field-succ:
  assumes isSucc i shows pred i  $\in$  Field r  $\wedge$  aboveS (pred i)  $\neq \{\}$   $\wedge$  succ (pred i) = i
proof–
  obtain j where j: aboveS j  $\neq \{\}$  i = succ j
  using assms unfolding isSucc-def by auto
  then obtain j  $\in$  Field r j  $\neq$  i
  by (metis FieldI1 succ-diff succ-in)
  then show ?thesis unfolding pred-def
  by (metis (mono-tags, lifting) j someI-ex)
qed

```

**lemmas**  $\text{pred-Field}[simp] = \text{pred-Field-succ}[THEN\ conjunct1]$   
**lemmas**  $\text{aboveS-pred}[simp] = \text{pred-Field-succ}[THEN\ conjunct2, THEN\ conjunct1]$   
**lemmas**  $\text{succ-pred}[simp] = \text{pred-Field-succ}[THEN\ conjunct2, THEN\ conjunct2]$

**lemma**  $\text{isSucc-pred-in}$ :  
**assumes**  $\text{isSucc } i$  **shows**  $(\text{pred } i, i) \in r$   
**by**  $(metis\ assms\ \text{pred-Field-succ}\ \text{succ-in})$

**lemma**  $\text{isSucc-pred-diff}$ :  
**assumes**  $\text{isSucc } i$  **shows**  $\text{pred } i \neq i$   
**by**  $(metis\ \text{aboveS-pred}\ assms\ \text{succ-diff}\ \text{succ-pred})$

**lemma**  $\text{succ-inj}[simp]$ :  
**assumes**  $\text{aboveS } i \neq \{\}$  **and**  $\text{aboveS } j \neq \{\}$   
**shows**  $\text{succ } i = \text{succ } j \longleftrightarrow i = j$   
**by**  $(metis\ \text{FieldI1}\ assms\ \text{succ-def}\ \text{succ-in}\ \text{supr-under}\ \text{under-underS-suc})$

**lemma**  $\text{pred-succ}[simp]$ :  
**assumes**  $\text{aboveS } j \neq \{\}$  **shows**  $\text{pred } (\text{succ } j) = j$   
**using**  $assms\ \text{isSucc-def}\ \text{pred-Field-succ}\ \text{succ-inj}$  **by**  $\text{blast}$

**lemma**  $\text{less-succ}[simp]$ :  
**assumes**  $\text{aboveS } i \neq \{\}$   
**shows**  $(j, \text{succ } i) \in r \longleftrightarrow (j, i) \in r \vee j = \text{succ } i$   
**by**  $(metis\ \text{FieldII1}\ assms\ \text{in-notinI}\ \text{max2-equals1}\ \text{max2-equals2}\ \text{max2-iff}\ \text{succ-in}\ \text{succ-smallest})$

**lemma**  $\text{underS-succ}[simp]$ :  
**assumes**  $\text{aboveS } i \neq \{\}$   
**shows**  $\text{underS } (\text{succ } i) = \text{under } i$   
**unfolding**  $\text{underS-def}\ \text{under-def}$  **by**  $(auto\ simp:\ assms\ \text{succ-not-in})$

**lemma**  $\text{succ-mono}$ :  
**assumes**  $\text{aboveS } j \neq \{\}$  **and**  $(i, j) \in r$   
**shows**  $(\text{succ } i, \text{succ } j) \in r$   
**by**  $(metis\ (\text{full-types})\ assms\ \text{less-succ}\ \text{succ-smallest})$

**lemma**  $\text{under-succ}[simp]$ :  
**assumes**  $\text{aboveS } i \neq \{\}$   
**shows**  $\text{under } (\text{succ } i) = \text{insert } (\text{succ } i) (\text{under } i)$   
**using**  $\text{less-succ}[OF\ assms]$  **unfolding**  $\text{under-def}$  **by**  $\text{auto}$

**definition**  $\text{mergeSL} :: ('a \Rightarrow 'b \Rightarrow 'b) \Rightarrow (('a \Rightarrow 'b) \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'b) \Rightarrow ('a \Rightarrow 'b) \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'b$   
**where**  
 $\text{mergeSL } S\ L\ f\ i \equiv \text{if } \text{isSucc } i \text{ then } S\ (\text{pred } i)\ (f\ (\text{pred } i)) \text{ else } L\ f\ i$

### 8.5.2 Well-order recursion with (zero), succesor, and limit

**definition**  $worecSL :: ('a \Rightarrow 'b \Rightarrow 'b) \Rightarrow (('a \Rightarrow 'b) \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'b) \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'b$   
**where**  $worecSL S L \equiv worec (mergeSL S L)$

**definition**  $adm-woL L \equiv \forall f g i. isLim i \wedge (\forall j \in underS i. f j = g j) \longrightarrow L f i = L g i$

**lemma**  $mergeSL: adm-woL L \Longrightarrow adm-wo (mergeSL S L)$

**unfolding**  $adm-wo-def adm-woL-def isLim-def$   
**by**  $(smt (verit, ccfv-threshold) isSucc-pred-diff isSucc-pred-in mergeSL-def underS-I)$

**lemma**  $worec-fixpoint1: adm-wo H \Longrightarrow worec H i = H (worec H) i$   
**by**  $(metis worec-fixpoint)$

**lemma**  $worecSL-isSucc:$

**assumes**  $a: adm-woL L$  **and**  $i: isSucc i$   
**shows**  $worecSL S L i = S (pred i) (worecSL S L (pred i))$   
**by**  $(metis a i mergeSL mergeSL-def worecSL-def worec-fixpoint)$

**lemma**  $worecSL-succ:$

**assumes**  $a: adm-woL L$  **and**  $i: aboveS j \neq \{\}$   
**shows**  $worecSL S L (succ j) = S j (worecSL S L j)$   
**by**  $(simp add: a i isSucc-succ worecSL-isSucc)$

**lemma**  $worecSL-isLim:$

**assumes**  $a: adm-woL L$  **and**  $i: isLim i$   
**shows**  $worecSL S L i = L (worecSL S L) i$   
**by**  $(metis a i isLim-def mergeSL mergeSL-def worecSL-def worec-fixpoint)$

**definition**  $worecZSL :: 'b \Rightarrow ('a \Rightarrow 'b \Rightarrow 'b) \Rightarrow (('a \Rightarrow 'b) \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'b) \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'b$   
**where**  $worecZSL Z S L \equiv worecSL S (\lambda f a. if a = zero then Z else L f a)$

**lemma**  $worecZSL-zero:$

**assumes**  $a: adm-woL L$   
**shows**  $worecZSL Z S L zero = Z$   
**by**  $(smt (verit, best) adm-woL-def assms isLim-zero worecSL-isLim worecZSL-def)$

**lemma**  $worecZSL-succ:$

**assumes**  $a: adm-woL L$  **and**  $i: aboveS j \neq \{\}$   
**shows**  $worecZSL Z S L (succ j) = S j (worecZSL Z S L j)$   
**unfolding**  $worecZSL-def$   
**by**  $(smt (verit, best) a adm-woL-def i worecSL-succ)$

**lemma**  $worecZSL-isLim:$

**assumes**  $a: adm-woL L$  **and**  $isLim i$  **and**  $i \neq zero$   
**shows**  $worecZSL Z S L i = L (worecZSL Z S L) i$   
**proof**–  
**let**  $?L = \lambda f a. if a = zero then Z else L f a$

**have**  $worecZSL\ Z\ S\ L\ i = ?L\ (worecZSL\ Z\ S\ L)\ i$   
**unfolding**  $worecZSL\text{-}def$  **by**  $(smt\ (verit,\ best)\ adm\text{-}woL\text{-}def\ assms\ worecSL\text{-}isLim)$   
**also have**  $\dots = L\ (worecZSL\ Z\ S\ L)\ i$  **using**  $assms$  **by**  $simp$   
**finally show**  $?thesis$  .  
**qed**

### 8.5.3 Well-order succ-lim induction

**lemma**  $ord\text{-}cases$ :

**obtains**  $j$  **where**  $i = succ\ j$  **and**  $aboveS\ j \neq \{\}$  **|**  $isLim\ i$   
**by**  $(metis\ isLim\text{-}def\ isSucc\text{-}def)$

**lemma**  $well\text{-}order\text{-}inductSL[case\text{-}names\ Suc\ Lim]$ :

**assumes**  $\bigwedge i. \llbracket aboveS\ i \neq \{\};\ P\ i \rrbracket \implies P\ (succ\ i)\ \bigwedge i. \llbracket isLim\ i;\ \bigwedge j. j \in underS\ i \implies P\ j \rrbracket \implies P\ i$

**shows**  $P\ i$

**proof**  $(induction\ rule:\ well\text{-}order\text{-}induct)$

**case**  $(1\ x)$

**then show**  $?case$

**by**  $(metis\ assms\ ord\text{-}cases\ succ\text{-}diff\ succ\text{-}in\ underS\text{-}E)$

**qed**

**lemma**  $well\text{-}order\text{-}inductZSL[case\text{-}names\ Zero\ Suc\ Lim]$ :

**assumes**  $P\ zero$

**and**  $\bigwedge i. \llbracket aboveS\ i \neq \{\};\ P\ i \rrbracket \implies P\ (succ\ i)$  **and**

$\bigwedge i. \llbracket isLim\ i;\ i \neq zero;\ \bigwedge j. j \in underS\ i \implies P\ j \rrbracket \implies P\ i$

**shows**  $P\ i$

**by**  $(metis\ assms\ well\text{-}order\text{-}inductSL)$

**definition**  $isSuccOrd \equiv \exists\ j \in Field\ r. \forall\ i \in Field\ r. (i,j) \in r$

**definition**  $isLimOrd \equiv \neg\ isSuccOrd$

**lemma**  $isLimOrd\text{-}succ$ :

**assumes**  $isLimOrd$  **and**  $i \in Field\ r$

**shows**  $succ\ i \in Field\ r$

**using**  $assms$  **unfolding**  $isLimOrd\text{-}def\ isSuccOrd\text{-}def$

**using**  $FieldI1[of\ succ\ i - r]\ in\ notinI[of\ i]\ succ\text{-}smallest[of\ i]$  **by**  $blast$

**lemma**  $isLimOrd\text{-}aboveS$ :

**assumes**  $l:\ isLimOrd$  **and**  $i:\ i \in Field\ r$

**shows**  $aboveS\ i \neq \{\}$

**proof**—

**obtain**  $j$  **where**  $j \in Field\ r$  **and**  $(j,i) \notin r$

**using**  $assms$  **unfolding**  $isLimOrd\text{-}def\ isSuccOrd\text{-}def$  **by**  $auto$

**hence**  $(i,j) \in r \wedge j \neq i$  **by**  $(metis\ i\ max2\text{-}def\ max2\text{-}greater)$

**thus**  $?thesis$  **unfolding**  $aboveS\text{-}def$  **by**  $auto$

**qed**

**lemma** *succ-aboveS-isLimOrd*:  
**assumes**  $\forall i \in \text{Field } r. \text{aboveS } i \neq \{\}$   $\wedge \text{succ } i \in \text{Field } r$   
**shows** *isLimOrd*  
**using** *assms isLimOrd-def isSuccOrd-def succ-not-in* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *isLim-iff*:  
**assumes** *l*: *isLim* *i* **and** *j*:  $j \in \text{underS } i$   
**shows**  $\exists k. k \in \text{underS } i \wedge j \in \text{underS } k$   
**by** (*metis Order-Relation.underS-Field empty-iff isLim-supr j l underS-empty underS-supr*)

**end**

**abbreviation** *zero*  $\equiv \text{wo-rel.zero}$   
**abbreviation** *succ*  $\equiv \text{wo-rel.succ}$   
**abbreviation** *pred*  $\equiv \text{wo-rel.pred}$   
**abbreviation** *isSucc*  $\equiv \text{wo-rel.isSucc}$   
**abbreviation** *isLim*  $\equiv \text{wo-rel.isLim}$   
**abbreviation** *isLimOrd*  $\equiv \text{wo-rel.isLimOrd}$   
**abbreviation** *isSuccOrd*  $\equiv \text{wo-rel.isSuccOrd}$   
**abbreviation** *adm-woL*  $\equiv \text{wo-rel.adm-woL}$   
**abbreviation** *worecSL*  $\equiv \text{wo-rel.worecSL}$   
**abbreviation** *worecZSL*  $\equiv \text{wo-rel.worecZSL}$

## 8.6 Projections of wellorders

**definition** *oproj*  $r \ s \ f \equiv \text{Field } s \subseteq f^{-1}(\text{Field } r) \wedge \text{compat } r \ s \ f$

**lemma** *oproj-in*:  
**assumes** *oproj*  $r \ s \ f$  **and**  $(a, a') \in r$   
**shows**  $(f \ a, f \ a') \in s$   
**using** *assms unfolding oproj-def compat-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *oproj-Field*:  
**assumes** *f*: *oproj*  $r \ s \ f$  **and** *a*:  $a \in \text{Field } r$   
**shows**  $f \ a \in \text{Field } s$   
**using** *oproj-in[OF f] a unfolding Field-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *oproj-Field2*:  
**assumes** *f*: *oproj*  $r \ s \ f$  **and** *a*:  $b \in \text{Field } s$   
**shows**  $\exists a \in \text{Field } r. f \ a = b$   
**using** *assms unfolding oproj-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *oproj-under*:  
**assumes** *f*: *oproj*  $r \ s \ f$  **and** *a*:  $a \in \text{under } r \ a'$   
**shows**  $f \ a \in \text{under } s \ (f \ a')$   
**using** *oproj-in[OF f] a unfolding under-def* **by** *auto*

**theorem** *embedI*:

**assumes** *r*: *Well-order r* **and** *s*: *Well-order s*

**and** *f*:  $\bigwedge a. a \in \text{Field } r \implies f a \in \text{Field } s \wedge f \text{ ' underS } r a \subseteq \text{underS } s (f a)$

**shows**  $\exists g. \text{embed } r s g$

**proof** –

**interpret** *r*: *wo-rel r* **by** *unfold-locales (rule r)*

**interpret** *s*: *wo-rel s* **by** *unfold-locales (rule s)*

**let** *?G* =  $\lambda g a. \text{suc } s (g \text{ ' underS } r a)$

**define** *g* **where** *g* = *worec r ?G*

**have** *adm*: *adm-wo r ?G* **unfolding** *r.adm-wo-def image-def* **by** *auto*

**{fix** *a* **assume** *a*  $\in \text{Field } r$

**hence** *bij-betw g (under r a) (under s (g a))*  $\wedge$

*g a*  $\in \text{under } s (f a)$

**proof**(*induction a rule: r.underS-induct*)

**case** (1 *a*)

**hence** *a*: *a*  $\in \text{Field } r$

**and** *IH1a*:  $\bigwedge a1. a1 \in \text{underS } r a \implies \text{inj-on } g (\text{under } r a1)$

**and** *IH1b*:  $\bigwedge a1. a1 \in \text{underS } r a \implies g \text{ ' under } r a1 = \text{under } s (g a1)$

**and** *IH2*:  $\bigwedge a1. a1 \in \text{underS } r a \implies g a1 \in \text{under } s (f a1)$

**unfolding** *underS-def Field-def bij-betw-def* **by** *auto*

**have** *fa*: *f a*  $\in \text{Field } s$  **using** *f[OF a]* **by** *auto*

**have** *g*: *g a* = *suc s (g ' underS r a)*

**using** *r.worec-fixpoint[OF adm]* **unfolding** *g-def fun-eq-iff* **by** *blast*

**have** *A0*: *g ' underS r a*  $\subseteq \text{Field } s$

**using** *IH1b* **by** (*metis IH2 image-subsetI in-mono under-Field*)

**{fix** *a1* **assume** *a1*: *a1*  $\in \text{underS } r a$

**from** *IH2[OF this]* **have** *g a1*  $\in \text{under } s (f a1)$  .

**moreover** **have** *f a1*  $\in \text{underS } s (f a)$  **using** *f[OF a] a1* **by** *auto*

**ultimately** **have** *g a1*  $\in \text{underS } s (f a)$  **by** (*metis s.ANTISYM s.TRANS*

*under-underS-trans*)

**}**

**hence** *fa-in*: *f a*  $\in \text{AboveS } s (g \text{ ' underS } r a)$  **unfolding** *AboveS-def*

**using** *fa* **by** *simp (metis (lifting, full-types) mem-Collect-eq underS-def)*

**hence** *A*: *AboveS s (g ' underS r a)*  $\neq \{\}$  **by** *auto*

**have** *ga*: *g a*  $\in \text{Field } s$  **unfolding** *g* **using** *s.suc-inField[OF A0 A]* .

**show** *?case*

**unfolding** *bij-betw-def*

**proof** (*intro conjI*)

**show** *inj-on g (r.under a)*

**by** (*metis A IH1a IH1b a bij-betw-def g ga r s s.suc-greater subsetI*

*wellorders-totally-ordered-aux*)

**show** *g ' r.under a* = *s.under (g a)*

**by** (*metis A A0 IH1a IH1b a bij-betw-def g ga r s s.suc-greater wellorders-totally-ordered-aux*)

**show** *g a*  $\in \text{s.under } (f a)$

**by** (*simp add: fa-in g s.suc-least-AboveS under-def*)

**qed**

**qed**

**}**

**thus** *?thesis* **unfolding** *embed-def* **by** *auto*  
**qed**

**corollary** *ordLeq-def2*:

$r \leq_o s \iff \text{Well-order } r \wedge \text{Well-order } s \wedge$   
 $(\exists f. \forall a \in \text{Field } r. f a \in \text{Field } s \wedge f ' \text{underS } r a \subseteq \text{underS } s (f a))$   
**using** *embed-in-Field*[*of r s*] *embed-underS2*[*of r s*] *embedI*[*of r s*]  
**unfolding** *ordLeq-def* **by** *fast*

**lemma** *iso-oproj*:

**assumes** *r*: *Well-order r* **and** *s*: *Well-order s* **and** *f*: *iso r s f*  
**shows** *oproj r s f*  
**by** (*metis embed-Field f iso-Field iso-iff iso-iff3 oproj-def r s*)

**theorem** *oproj-embed*:

**assumes** *r*: *Well-order r* **and** *s*: *Well-order s* **and** *f*: *oproj r s f*  
**shows**  $\exists g. \text{embed } s r g$   
**proof** (*rule embedI*[*OF s r*, *of inv-into (Field r) f*], *unfold underS-def*, *safe*)  
**fix** *b* **assume**  $b \in \text{Field } s$   
**thus**  $\text{inv-into } (Field r) f b \in \text{Field } r$   
**using** *oproj-Field2*[*OF f*] **by** (*metis imageI inv-into-into*)  
**next**  
**fix** *a b* **assume**  $b \in \text{Field } s \wedge a \neq b \wedge (a, b) \in s$   
 $\text{inv-into } (Field r) f a = \text{inv-into } (Field r) f b$   
**with** *f* **show** *False*  
**by** (*meson FieldI1 in-mono inv-into-injective oproj-def*)  
**next**  
**fix** *a b* **assume**  $b \in \text{Field } s \wedge a \neq b \wedge (a, b) \in s$   
**{** **assume** *notin*:  $(\text{inv-into } (Field r) f a, \text{inv-into } (Field r) f b) \notin r$   
**moreover**  
**from**  $*(3)$  **have**  $a \in \text{Field } s$  **unfolding** *Field-def* **by** *auto*  
**then** **have**  $(\text{inv-into } (Field r) f b, \text{inv-into } (Field r) f a) \in r$   
**by** (*meson \*(1) notin f in-mono inv-into-into oproj-def r wo-rel.in-notinI wo-rel.intro*)  
**ultimately** **have**  $(\text{inv-into } (Field r) f b, \text{inv-into } (Field r) f a) \in r$   
**using** *r* **by** (*auto simp: well-order-on-def linear-order-on-def total-on-def*)  
**with**  $f[\text{unfolded oproj-def compat-def}] *(1) \langle a \in \text{Field } s \rangle$   
 $f\text{-inv-into-f}[\text{of } b f \text{Field } r] f\text{-inv-into-f}[\text{of } a f \text{Field } r]$   
**have**  $(b, a) \in s$  **by** (*metis in-mono*)  
**with**  $*(2,3)$  *s* **have** *False*  
**by** (*auto simp: well-order-on-def linear-order-on-def partial-order-on-def anti-sym-def*)  
**}** **thus**  $(\text{inv-into } (Field r) f a, \text{inv-into } (Field r) f b) \in r$  **by** *blast*  
**qed**

**corollary** *oproj-ordLeq*:

**assumes** *r*: *Well-order r* **and** *s*: *Well-order s* **and** *f*: *oproj r s f*  
**shows**  $s \leq_o r$   
**using** *f* *oproj-embed ordLess-iff ordLess-or-ordLeq r s* **by** *blast*



end

## 9 Ordinal Arithmetic

**theory** *Ordinal-Arithmetic*  
**imports** *Wellorder-Constructions*  
**begin**

**definition** *osum* :: '*a* rel  $\Rightarrow$  '*b* rel  $\Rightarrow$  ('*a* + '*b*) rel (**infixr** <+o> 70)  
**where**

$r + o r' = \text{map-prod } \text{Inl } \text{Inl } 'r \cup \text{map-prod } \text{Inr } \text{Inr } 'r' \cup$   
 $\{( \text{Inl } a, \text{Inr } a' ) \mid a a' . a \in \text{Field } r \wedge a' \in \text{Field } r'\}$

**lemma** *Field-osum*:  $\text{Field}(r + o r') = \text{Inl } ' \text{Field } r \cup \text{Inr } ' \text{Field } r'$   
**unfolding** *osum-def* *Field-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *osum-Refl*:  $\llbracket \text{Refl } r; \text{Refl } r' \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{Refl } (r + o r')$

**unfolding** *refl-on-def* *Field-osum* **unfolding** *osum-def* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *osum-trans*:

**assumes** *TRANS*: *trans* *r* **and** *TRANS'*: *trans* *r'*

**shows** *trans* (*r* + *o* *r'*)

**unfolding** *trans-def*

**proof**(*safe*)

**fix** *x y z* **assume** \*: (*x*, *y*)  $\in$  *r* + *o* *r'* (*y*, *z*)  $\in$  *r* + *o* *r'*

**thus** (*x*, *z*)  $\in$  *r* + *o* *r'*

**proof** (*cases* *x y z* *rule*: *sum.exhaust*[*case-product* *sum.exhaust* *sum.exhaust*])

**case** (*Inl-Inl-Inl* *a b c*)

**with** \* **have** (*a*,*b*)  $\in$  *r* (*b*,*c*)  $\in$  *r* **unfolding** *osum-def* **by** *auto*

**with** *TRANS* **have** (*a*,*c*)  $\in$  *r* **unfolding** *trans-def* **by** *blast*

**with** *Inl-Inl-Inl* **show** ?*thesis* **unfolding** *osum-def* **by** *auto*

**next**

**case** (*Inl-Inl-Inr* *a b c*)

**with** \* **have** *a*  $\in$  *Field* *r* *c*  $\in$  *Field* *r'* **unfolding** *osum-def* *Field-def* **by** *auto*

**with** *Inl-Inl-Inr* **show** ?*thesis* **unfolding** *osum-def* **by** *auto*

**next**

**case** (*Inl-Inr-Inr* *a b c*)

**with** \* **have** *a*  $\in$  *Field* *r* *c*  $\in$  *Field* *r'* **unfolding** *osum-def* *Field-def* **by** *auto*

**with** *Inl-Inr-Inr* **show** ?*thesis* **unfolding** *osum-def* **by** *auto*

**next**

**case** (*Inr-Inr-Inr* *a b c*)

**with** \* **have** (*a*,*b*)  $\in$  *r'* (*b*,*c*)  $\in$  *r'* **unfolding** *osum-def* **by** *auto*

**with** *TRANS'* **have** (*a*,*c*)  $\in$  *r'* **unfolding** *trans-def* **by** *blast*

**with** *Inr-Inr-Inr* **show** ?*thesis* **unfolding** *osum-def* **by** *auto*

**qed** (*auto simp: osum-def*)

**qed**

```

lemma osum-Preorder:  $\llbracket \text{Preorder } r; \text{Preorder } r' \rrbracket \implies \text{Preorder } (r + o \ r')$ 
  unfolding preorder-on-def using osum-Refl osum-trans
  by (metis inf.cobounded2[of  $r + o \ r'$  Field  $(r + o \ r') \times \text{Field } (r + o \ r')$ ]
    Restr-Field[of  $r + o \ r'$ ])

lemma osum-antisym:  $\llbracket \text{antisym } r; \text{antisym } r' \rrbracket \implies \text{antisym } (r + o \ r')$ 
  unfolding antisym-def osum-def by auto

lemma osum-Partial-order:  $\llbracket \text{Partial-order } r; \text{Partial-order } r' \rrbracket \implies \text{Partial-order } (r + o \ r')$ 
  unfolding partial-order-on-def using osum-Preorder osum-antisym by blast

lemma osum-Total:  $\llbracket \text{Total } r; \text{Total } r' \rrbracket \implies \text{Total } (r + o \ r')$ 
  unfolding total-on-def Field-osum unfolding osum-def by blast

lemma osum-Linear-order:  $\llbracket \text{Linear-order } r; \text{Linear-order } r' \rrbracket \implies \text{Linear-order } (r + o \ r')$ 
  unfolding linear-order-on-def using osum-Partial-order osum-Total by blast

lemma osum-wf:
  assumes WF: wf  $r$  and WF': wf  $r'$ 
  shows wf  $(r + o \ r')$ 
  unfolding wf-eq-minimal2 unfolding Field-osum
proof(intro allI impI, elim conjE)
  fix  $A$  assume  $*$ :  $A \subseteq \text{Inl } ' \text{Field } r \cup \text{Inr } ' \text{Field } r'$  and  $**$ :  $A \neq \{\}$ 
  obtain  $B$  where B-def:  $B = A \text{ Int } \text{Inl } ' \text{Field } r$  by blast
  show  $\exists a \in A. \forall a' \in A. (a', a) \notin r + o \ r'$ 
  proof(cases  $B = \{\}$ )
    case False
    hence  $B \neq \{\}$   $B \leq \text{Inl } ' \text{Field } r$  using B-def by auto
    hence  $\text{Inl } -' B \neq \{\}$   $\text{Inl } -' B \leq \text{Field } r$  unfolding vimage-def by auto
    then obtain  $a$  where  $1: a \in \text{Inl } -' B$  and  $\forall a1 \in \text{Inl } -' B. (a1, a) \notin r$ 
    using WF unfolding wf-eq-minimal2 by metis
    hence  $\forall a1 \in A. (a1, \text{Inl } a) \notin r + o \ r'$ 
    unfolding osum-def using B-def  $**$  by (auto simp: vimage-def Field-def)
    thus ?thesis using  $1$  unfolding B-def by auto
  next
  case True
  hence  $1: A \leq \text{Inr } ' \text{Field } r'$  using  $*$  B-def by auto
  with  $**$  have  $\text{Inr } -' A \neq \{\}$   $\text{Inr } -' A \leq \text{Field } r'$  unfolding vimage-def by
auto
  with  $**$  obtain  $a'$  where  $2: a' \in \text{Inr } -' A$  and  $\forall a1' \in \text{Inr } -' A. (a1', a') \notin r'$ 
  using WF' unfolding wf-eq-minimal2 by metis
  hence  $\forall a1' \in A. (a1', \text{Inr } a') \notin r + o \ r'$ 
  unfolding osum-def using  $**$   $1$  by (auto simp: vimage-def Field-def)
  thus ?thesis using  $2$  by blast
qed
qed

```

```

lemma osum-minus-Id:
  assumes  $r$ : Total  $r \multimap (r \leq Id)$  and  $r'$ : Total  $r' \multimap (r' \leq Id)$ 
  shows  $(r +_o r') - Id \leq (r - Id) +_o (r' - Id)$ 
  unfolding osum-def Total-Id-Field[OF  $r$ ] Total-Id-Field[OF  $r'$ ] by auto

lemma osum-minus-Id1:
   $r \leq Id \implies (r +_o r') - Id \leq (Inl \text{ ` } Field\ r \times Inr \text{ ` } Field\ r') \cup (map\text{-}prod\ Inr\ Inr$ 
   $\text{ ` } (r' - Id))$ 
  unfolding osum-def by auto

lemma osum-minus-Id2:
   $r' \leq Id \implies (r +_o r') - Id \leq (map\text{-}prod\ Inl\ Inl \text{ ` } (r - Id)) \cup (Inl \text{ ` } Field\ r \times$ 
   $Inr \text{ ` } Field\ r')$ 
  unfolding osum-def by auto

lemma osum-wf-Id:
  assumes TOT: Total  $r$  and TOT': Total  $r'$  and WF: wf( $r - Id$ ) and WF':
  wf( $r' - Id$ )
  shows wf  $((r +_o r') - Id)$ 
proof(cases  $r \leq Id \vee r' \leq Id$ )
  case False
  thus ?thesis
    using osum-minus-Id[of  $r\ r'$ ] assms osum-wf[of  $r - Id\ r' - Id$ ]
    wf-subset[of  $(r - Id) +_o (r' - Id)\ (r +_o r') - Id$ ] by auto
next
  have  $1$ : wf  $(Inl \text{ ` } Field\ r \times Inr \text{ ` } Field\ r')$  by (rule wf-Int-Times) auto
  case True
  thus ?thesis
  proof (elim disjE)
    assume  $r \subseteq Id$ 
    thus wf  $((r +_o r') - Id)$ 
    by (rule wf-subset[rotated, OF osum-minus-Id1 wf-Un[OF  $1\ wf\text{-}map\text{-}prod\text{-}image$ [OF
    WF']]]]) auto
  next
    assume  $r' \subseteq Id$ 
    thus wf  $((r +_o r') - Id)$ 
    by (rule wf-subset[rotated, OF osum-minus-Id2 wf-Un[OF wf-map-prod-image[OF
    WF]  $1$ ]]]) auto
  qed
qed

lemma osum-Well-order:
  assumes WELL: Well-order  $r$  and WELL': Well-order  $r'$ 
  shows Well-order  $(r +_o r')$ 
  by (meson WELL WELL' osum-Linear-order osum-wf-Id well-order-on-def wo-rel.TOTAL
  wo-rel.intro)

lemma osum-embedL:

```

**assumes** *WELL*: *Well-order r* **and** *WELL'*: *Well-order r'*  
**shows** *embed r (r +o r')* *Inl*  
**proof** –  
**have** *1: Well-order (r +o r')* **using** *assms* **by** (*auto simp add: osum-Well-order*)  
**moreover**  
**have** *compat r (r +o r')* *Inl* **unfolding** *compat-def osum-def* **by** *auto*  
**moreover**  
**have** *ofilter (r +o r') (Inl ' Field r)*  
**unfolding** *wo-rel.ofilter-def[unfolded wo-rel-def, OF 1] Field-osum under-def*  
**unfolding** *osum-def Field-def* **by** *auto*  
**ultimately show** *?thesis* **using** *assms* **by** (*auto simp add: embed-iff-compat-inj-on-ofilter*)  
**qed**

**corollary** *osum-ordLeqL*:  
**assumes** *WELL*: *Well-order r* **and** *WELL'*: *Well-order r'*  
**shows** *r ≤o r +o r'*  
**using** *assms osum-embedL osum-Well-order* **unfolding** *ordLeq-def* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *dir-image-alt*: *dir-image r f = map-prod f f ' r*  
**unfolding** *dir-image-def map-prod-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *map-prod-ordIso*:  $\llbracket \text{Well-order } r; \text{inj-on } f \text{ (Field } r) \rrbracket \implies \text{map-prod } f f ' r$   
 $=o r$   
**by** (*metis dir-image-alt dir-image-ordIso ordIso-symmetric*)

**definition** *oprod* :: *'a rel ⇒ 'b rel ⇒ ('a × 'b) rel* (**infixr** *«\*o»* 80)  
**where**  $r *o r' = \{((x1, y1), (x2, y2)).$   
 $((y1, y2) \in r' - Id \wedge x1 \in \text{Field } r \wedge x2 \in \text{Field } r) \vee$   
 $((y1, y2) \in \text{Restr } Id (\text{Field } r') \wedge (x1, x2) \in r)\}$

**lemma** *Field-oprod*: *Field (r \*o r') = Field r × Field r'*  
**unfolding** *oprod-def Field-def* **by** *auto blast+*

**lemma** *oprod-Refl*:  $\llbracket \text{Refl } r; \text{Refl } r' \rrbracket \implies \text{Refl } (r *o r')$   
**unfolding** *refl-on-def Field-oprod* **unfolding** *oprod-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *oprod-trans*:  
**assumes** *trans r trans r' antisym r antisym r'*  
**shows** *trans (r \*o r')*  
**using** *assms* **by** (*clarsimp simp: trans-def antisym-def oprod-def*) (*metis FieldI1 FieldI2*)

**lemma** *oprod-Preorder*:  $\llbracket \text{Preorder } r; \text{Preorder } r'; \text{antisym } r; \text{antisym } r' \rrbracket \implies \text{Preorder } (r *o r')$   
**unfolding** *preorder-on-def* **using** *oprod-Refl oprod-trans*  
**by** (*metis Restr-Field[of r \*o r']*  
*inf.cobounded2[of r \*o r' Field (r \*o r') × Field (r \*o r')])*

**lemma** *oprod-antisym*:  $\llbracket \text{antisym } r; \text{antisym } r' \rrbracket \implies \text{antisym } (r *o r')$

**unfolding** *antisym-def oprod-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *oprod-Partial-order*:  $\llbracket \text{Partial-order } r; \text{Partial-order } r' \rrbracket \implies \text{Partial-order } (r * o r')$   
**unfolding** *partial-order-on-def* **using** *oprod-Preorder oprod-antisym* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *oprod-Total*:  $\llbracket \text{Total } r; \text{Total } r' \rrbracket \implies \text{Total } (r * o r')$   
**unfolding** *total-on-def Field-oprod* **unfolding** *oprod-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *oprod-Linear-order*:  $\llbracket \text{Linear-order } r; \text{Linear-order } r' \rrbracket \implies \text{Linear-order } (r * o r')$   
**unfolding** *linear-order-on-def* **using** *oprod-Partial-order oprod-Total* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *oprod-wf*:  
**assumes** *WF*: *wf* *r* **and** *WF'*: *wf* *r'*  
**shows** *wf*  $(r * o r')$   
**unfolding** *wf-eq-minimal2* **unfolding** *Field-oprod*  
**proof**(*intro allI impI, elim conjE*)  
**fix** *A* **assume** \*:  $A \subseteq \text{Field } r \times \text{Field } r'$  **and** \*\*:  $A \neq \{\}$   
**then obtain** *y* **where** *y*:  $y \in \text{snd } A \ \forall y' \in \text{snd } A. (y', y) \notin r'$   
**using** *spec[OF WF'[unfolded wf-eq-minimal2], of snd A]* **by** *auto*  
**let** *?A* = *fst A*  $\cap \{x. (x, y) \in A\}$   
**from** \* *y* **have** *?A*  $\neq \{\}$  *?A*  $\subseteq \text{Field } r$  **by** *auto*  
**then obtain** *x* **where** *x*:  $x \in ?A$  **and**  $\forall x' \in ?A. (x', x) \notin r$   
**using** *spec[OF WF[unfolded wf-eq-minimal2], of ?A]* **by** *auto*  
**with** *y* **have**  $\forall a' \in A. (a', (x, y)) \notin r * o r'$   
**unfolding** *oprod-def mem-Collect-eq split-beta fst-conv snd-conv Id-def* **by** *auto*  
**moreover from** *x* **have**  $(x, y) \in A$  **by** *auto*  
**ultimately show**  $\exists a \in A. \forall a' \in A. (a', a) \notin r * o r'$  **by** *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *oprod-minus-Id*:  
**assumes** *r*:  $\text{Total } r \neg (r \leq \text{Id})$  **and** *r'*:  $\text{Total } r' \neg (r' \leq \text{Id})$   
**shows**  $(r * o r') - \text{Id} \leq (r - \text{Id}) * o (r' - \text{Id})$   
**unfolding** *oprod-def Total-Id-Field[OF r] Total-Id-Field[OF r']* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *oprod-minus-Id1*:  
 $r \leq \text{Id} \implies r * o r' - \text{Id} \leq \{(x, y1), (x, y2)). x \in \text{Field } r \wedge (y1, y2) \in (r' - \text{Id})\}$   
**unfolding** *oprod-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *wf-extend-oprod1*:  
**assumes** *wf* *r*  
**shows** *wf*  $\{(x, y1), (x, y2)) . x \in A \wedge (y1, y2) \in r\}$   
**proof** (*unfold wf-eq-minimal2, intro allI impI, elim conjE*)  
**fix** *B*  
**assume** \*:  $B \subseteq \text{Field } \{(x, y1), (x, y2)) . x \in A \wedge (y1, y2) \in r\}$  **and**  $B \neq \{\}$   
**from** *image-mono[OF \*, of snd]* **have**  $\text{snd } B \subseteq \text{Field } r$  **unfolding** *Field-def*  
**by** *force*  
**with**  $\langle B \neq \{\} \rangle$  **obtain** *x* **where** *x*:  $x \in \text{snd } B \ \forall x' \in \text{snd } B. (x', x) \notin r$

using *spec*[*OF assms*[*unfolded wf-eq-minimal2*], of *snd* ‘*B*] **by** *auto*  
 then obtain *a* where  $(a, x) \in B$  **by** *auto*  
 moreover  
 from  $* x$  have  $\forall a' \in B. (a', (a, x)) \notin \{((x, y1), (x, y2)) . x \in A \wedge (y1, y2) \in r\}$   
**by** *auto*  
 ultimately show  $\exists ax \in B. \forall a' \in B. (a', ax) \notin \{((x, y1), (x, y2)) . x \in A \wedge (y1, y2) \in r\}$  **by** *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *oprod-minus-Id2*:  
 $r' \leq Id \implies r * o r' - Id \leq \{((x1, y), (x2, y)). (x1, x2) \in (r - Id) \wedge y \in Field\}$   
*proof* *unfolding oprod-def by auto*

**lemma** *wf-extend-oprod2*:  
 assumes *wf* *r*  
 shows *wf*  $\{((x1, y), (x2, y)). (x1, x2) \in r \wedge y \in A\}$   
*proof* (*unfold wf-eq-minimal2, intro allI impI, elim conjE*)  
 fix *B*  
 assume  $*: B \subseteq Field \{((x1, y), (x2, y)). (x1, x2) \in r \wedge y \in A\}$  and  $B \neq \{\}$   
 from *image-mono*[*OF*  $*$ , of *fst*] have *fst* ‘*B*  $\subseteq Field\ r$  **unfolding** *Field-def* **by**  
*force*  
 with  $\langle B \neq \{\} \rangle$  obtain *x* where  $x: x \in fst\ 'B \wedge \forall x' \in fst\ 'B. (x', x) \notin r$   
 using *spec*[*OF assms*[*unfolded wf-eq-minimal2*], of *fst* ‘*B*] **by** *auto*  
 then obtain *a* where  $(x, a) \in B$  **by** *auto*  
 moreover  
 from  $* x$  have  $\forall a' \in B. (a', (x, a)) \notin \{((x1, y), (x2, y)). (x1, x2) \in r \wedge y \in A\}$   
**by** *auto*  
 ultimately show  $\exists xa \in B. \forall a' \in B. (a', xa) \notin \{((x1, y), (x2, y)). (x1, x2) \in r \wedge y \in A\}$  **by** *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *oprod-wf-Id*:  
 assumes *TOT*: *Total* *r* and *TOT'*: *Total* *r'* and *WF*: *wf*(*r* − *Id*) and *WF'*:  
*wf*(*r'* − *Id*)  
 shows *wf* ((*r* \* *o* *r'*) − *Id*)  
*proof* (*cases*  $r \leq Id \vee r' \leq Id$ )  
 case *False*  
 thus ?thesis  
 by (*meson* *TOT TOT' WF WF' oprod-minus-Id oprod-wf wf-subset*)  
 next  
 case *True*  
 thus ?thesis using *wf-subset*[*OF* *wf-extend-oprod1*[*OF* *WF*] *oprod-minus-Id1*]  
*wf-subset*[*OF* *wf-extend-oprod2*[*OF* *WF*] *oprod-minus-Id2*] **by** *auto*  
**qed**

**lemma** *oprod-Well-order*:  
 assumes *WELL*: *Well-order* *r* and *WELL'*: *Well-order* *r'*  
 shows *Well-order* (*r* \* *o* *r'*)

**by** (*meson WELL WELL' linear-order-on-def oprod-Linear-order oprod-wf-Id well-order-on-def*)

**lemma** *oprod-embed*:

**assumes** *WELL*: *Well-order r* **and** *WELL'*: *Well-order r'* **and**  $r' \neq \{\}$   
**shows** *embed r (r \*o r')* ( $\lambda x. (x, \text{minim } r' (\text{Field } r'))$ ) (**is embed** - - ?f)

**proof** –

**from** *assms*(3) **have**  $r': \text{Field } r' \neq \{\}$  **unfolding** *Field-def* **by** *auto*

**have** *minim[simp]*:  $\text{minim } r' (\text{Field } r') \in \text{Field } r'$

**using** *wo-rel.minim-inField*[*unfolded wo-rel-def, OF WELL' - r'*] **by** *auto*

**{ fix** *b*

**assume** *b*:  $(b, \text{minim } r' (\text{Field } r')) \in r'$

**hence**  $b \in \text{Field } r'$  **unfolding** *Field-def* **by** *auto*

**hence**  $(\text{minim } r' (\text{Field } r'), b) \in r'$

**using** *wo-rel.minim-least*[*unfolded wo-rel-def, OF WELL' subset-refl*]  $r'$  **by**

*auto*

**with** *b* **have**  $b = \text{minim } r' (\text{Field } r')$

**by** (*metis WELL' antisym-def linear-order-on-def partial-order-on-def well-order-on-def*)

**} note**  $*$  = *this*

**have** *1*: *Well-order (r \*o r')* **using** *assms* **by** (*auto simp add: oprod-Well-order*)

**moreover**

**from**  $r'$  **have** *compat r (r \*o r')* ?f **unfolding** *compat-def oprod-def* **by** *auto*

**moreover**

**from**  $*$  **have** *ofilter (r \*o r')* (?f ' *Field r*)

**unfolding** *wo-rel.ofilter-def*[*unfolded wo-rel-def, OF 1*] *Field-oprod under-def*

**unfolding** *oprod-def* **by** *auto* (*auto simp: image-iff Field-def*)

**moreover** **have** *inj-on ?f (Field r)* **unfolding** *inj-on-def* **by** *auto*

**ultimately show** ?thesis **using** *assms* **by** (*auto simp add: embed-iff-compat-inj-on-ofilter*)

**qed**

**corollary** *oprod-ordLeq*:  $\llbracket \text{Well-order } r; \text{Well-order } r'; r' \neq \{\} \rrbracket \implies r \leq_o r *o r'$

**using** *oprod-embed oprod-Well-order* **unfolding** *ordLeq-def* **by** *blast*

**definition** *support z A f* =  $\{x \in A. f x \neq z\}$

**lemma** *support-Un[simp]*: *support z (A  $\cup$  B) f* = *support z A f*  $\cup$  *support z B f*

**unfolding** *support-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *support-upd[simp]*: *support z A (f(x := z))* = *support z A f* -  $\{x\}$

**unfolding** *support-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *support-upd-subset[simp]*: *support z A (f(x := y))*  $\subseteq$  *support z A f*  $\cup \{x\}$

**unfolding** *support-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *fun-unequal-in-support*:

**assumes**  $f \neq g \in \text{Func } A B$   $g \in \text{Func } A C$

**shows**  $(\text{support } z A f \cup \text{support } z A g) \cap \{a. f a \neq g a\} \neq \{\}$

**using** *assms* **by** (*simp add: Func-def support-def disjoint-iff fun-eq-iff*) *metis*

**definition** *fin-support* **where**

*fin-support*  $z\ A = \{f. \text{finite } (\text{support } z\ A\ f)\}$

**lemma** *finite-support*:  $f \in \text{fin-support } z\ A \implies \text{finite } (\text{support } z\ A\ f)$

**unfolding** *support-def fin-support-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *fin-support-Field-osum*:

$f \in \text{fin-support } z\ (\text{Inl } 'A \cup \text{Inr } 'B) \longleftrightarrow$

$(f \circ \text{Inl}) \in \text{fin-support } z\ A \wedge (f \circ \text{Inr}) \in \text{fin-support } z\ B\ (\text{is } ?L \longleftrightarrow ?R1 \wedge ?R2)$

**proof** *safe*

**assume**  $?L$

**from**  $\langle ?L \rangle$  **show**  $?R1$  **unfolding** *fin-support-def support-def*

**by** (*fastforce simp: image-iff elim: finite-surj[of - - case-sum id undefined]*)

**from**  $\langle ?L \rangle$  **show**  $?R2$  **unfolding** *fin-support-def support-def*

**by** (*fastforce simp: image-iff elim: finite-surj[of - - case-sum undefined id]*)

**next**

**assume**  $?R1\ ?R2$

**thus**  $?L$  **unfolding** *fin-support-def support-Un*

**by** (*auto simp: support-def elim: finite-surj[of - - Inl] finite-surj[of - - Inr]*)

**qed**

**lemma** *Func-upd*:  $\llbracket f \in \text{Func } A\ B; x \in A; y \in B \rrbracket \implies f(x := y) \in \text{Func } A\ B$

**unfolding** *Func-def* **by** *auto*

**context** *wo-rel*

**begin**

**definition** *isMaxim* ::  $'a\ \text{set} \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow \text{bool}$

**where**  $\text{isMaxim } A\ b \equiv b \in A \wedge (\forall a \in A. (a, b) \in r)$

**definition** *maxim* ::  $'a\ \text{set} \Rightarrow 'a$

**where**  $\text{maxim } A \equiv \text{THE } b. \text{isMaxim } A\ b$

**lemma** *isMaxim-unique[intro]*:  $\llbracket \text{isMaxim } A\ x; \text{isMaxim } A\ y \rrbracket \implies x = y$

**unfolding** *isMaxim-def* **using** *antisymD[OF ANTISYM, of x y]* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *maxim-isMaxim*:  $\llbracket \text{finite } A; A \neq \{\}; A \subseteq \text{Field } r \rrbracket \implies \text{isMaxim } A\ (\text{maxim } A)$

**unfolding** *maxim-def*

**proof** (*rule theI', rule ex-ex1I[OF - isMaxim-unique, rotated], assumption+, induct A rule: finite-induct*)

**case** (*insert x A*)

**thus**  $?case$

**proof** (*cases A = {}*)

**case** *True*

**moreover** **have**  $\text{isMaxim } \{x\}\ x$  **unfolding** *isMaxim-def* **using** *refl-onD[OF REFL] insert(5)* **by** *auto*

**ultimately** **show**  $?thesis$  **by** *blast*

**next**



```

    case False
    with insert(3,5) obtain y where isMaxim A y by blast
    with insert(2,5) have if (y, x) ∈ r then isMaxim (insert x A) x else isMaxim
(insert x A) y
    unfolding isMaxim-def subset-eq by (metis insert-iff max2-def max2-equals1
max2-iff)
    thus ?thesis by metis
qed
qed simp

```

```

lemma maxim-in:  $\llbracket \text{finite } A; A \neq \{\}; A \subseteq \text{Field } r \rrbracket \implies \text{maxim } A \in A$ 
using maxim-isMaxim unfolding isMaxim-def by auto

```

```

lemma maxim-greatest:  $\llbracket \text{finite } A; x \in A; A \subseteq \text{Field } r \rrbracket \implies (x, \text{maxim } A) \in r$ 
using maxim-isMaxim unfolding isMaxim-def by auto

```

```

lemma isMaxim-zero: isMaxim A zero  $\implies A = \{\text{zero}\}$ 
unfolding isMaxim-def by auto

```

```

lemma maxim-insert:
  assumes finite A A ≠ {} A ⊆ Field r x ∈ Field r
  shows maxim (insert x A) = max2 x (maxim A)
proof -
  from assms have *: isMaxim (insert x A) (maxim (insert x A)) isMaxim A
(maxim A)
  using maxim-isMaxim by auto
  show ?thesis
  proof (cases (x, maxim A) ∈ r)
    case True
    with *(2) have isMaxim (insert x A) (maxim A)
    by (simp add: isMaxim-def)
    with *(1) True show ?thesis
    unfolding max2-def by (metis isMaxim-unique)
  next
    case False
    hence (maxim A, x) ∈ r by (metis *(2) assms(3,4) in-mono in-notinI is-
Maxim-def)
    with *(2) assms(4) have isMaxim (insert x A) x unfolding isMaxim-def
    using transD[OF TRANS, of - maxim A x] refl-onD[OF REFL, of x] by blast
    with *(1) False show ?thesis unfolding max2-def by (metis isMaxim-unique)
  qed
qed

```

```

lemma maxim-Un:
  assumes finite A A ≠ {} A ⊆ Field r finite B B ≠ {} B ⊆ Field r
  shows maxim (A ∪ B) = max2 (maxim A) (maxim B)
proof -
  from assms have *: isMaxim (A ∪ B) (maxim (A ∪ B)) isMaxim A (maxim A)
isMaxim B (maxim B)

```

```

    using maxim-isMaxim by auto
  show ?thesis
  proof (cases (maxim A, maxim B) ∈ r)
    case True
    with *(2,3) have isMaxim (A ∪ B) (maxim B) unfolding isMaxim-def
      using transD[OF TRANS, of - maxim A maxim B] by blast
    with *(1) True show ?thesis unfolding max2-def by (metis isMaxim-unique)
  next
    case False
    hence (maxim B, maxim A) ∈ r by (metis *(2,3) assms(3,6) in-mono in-notinI
isMaxim-def)
    with *(2,3) have isMaxim (A ∪ B) (maxim A)
      by (metis *(1) False Un-iff isMaxim-def isMaxim-unique)
    with *(1) False show ?thesis unfolding max2-def by (metis isMaxim-unique)
  qed
qed

```

```

lemma maxim-insert-zero:
  assumes finite A A ≠ {} A ⊆ Field r
  shows maxim (insert zero A) = maxim A
  using assms finite.cases in-mono max2-def maxim-in maxim-insert subset-empty
zero-in-Field zero-smallest by fastforce

```

```

lemma maxim-equality: isMaxim A x ⟹ maxim A = x
  unfolding maxim-def by (rule the-equality) auto

```

```

lemma maxim-singleton:
  x ∈ Field r ⟹ maxim {x} = x
  using refl-onD[OF REFL] by (intro maxim-equality) (simp add: isMaxim-def)

```

```

lemma maxim-Int: [finite A; A ≠ {}; A ⊆ Field r; maxim A ∈ B] ⟹ maxim (A
∩ B) = maxim A
  by (rule maxim-equality) (auto simp: isMaxim-def intro: maxim-in maxim-greatest)

```

```

lemma maxim-mono: [X ⊆ Y; finite Y; X ≠ {}; Y ⊆ Field r] ⟹ (maxim X,
maxim Y) ∈ r
  using maxim-in[OF finite-subset, of X Y] by (auto intro: maxim-greatest)

```

```

definition max-fun-diff f g ≡ maxim ({a ∈ Field r. f a ≠ g a})

```

```

lemma max-fun-diff-commute: max-fun-diff f g = max-fun-diff g f
  unfolding max-fun-diff-def by metis

```

```

lemma zero-under: x ∈ Field r ⟹ zero ∈ under x
  unfolding under-def by (auto intro: zero-smallest)

```

```

end

```

```

definition FinFunc r s = Func (Field s) (Field r) ∩ fin-support (zero r) (Field s)

```

**lemma** *FinFuncD*:  $\llbracket f \in \text{FinFunc } r \ s; x \in \text{Field } s \rrbracket \implies f\ x \in \text{Field } r$   
**unfolding** *FinFunc-def Func-def* **by** (*fastforce split: option.splits*)

**locale** *wo-rel2* =  
**fixes** *r s*  
**assumes** *rWELL*: *Well-order r*  
**and** *sWELL*: *Well-order s*  
**begin**

**interpretation** *r*: *wo-rel r* **by** *unfold-locales (rule rWELL)*  
**interpretation** *s*: *wo-rel s* **by** *unfold-locales (rule sWELL)*

**abbreviation** *SUPP*  $\equiv \text{support } r.\text{zero } (\text{Field } s)$   
**abbreviation** *FINFUNC*  $\equiv \text{FinFunc } r \ s$   
**lemmas** *FINFUNC D* = *FinFuncD*[*of - r s*]

**lemma** *fun-diff-alt*:  $\{a \in \text{Field } s. f\ a \neq g\ a\} = (\text{SUPP } f \cup \text{SUPP } g) \cap \{a. f\ a \neq g\ a\}$   
**by** (*auto simp: support-def*)

**lemma** *max-fun-diff-alt*:  
 $s.\text{max-fun-diff } f\ g = s.\text{maxim } ((\text{SUPP } f \cup \text{SUPP } g) \cap \{a. f\ a \neq g\ a\})$   
**unfolding** *s.max-fun-diff-def fun-diff-alt ..*

**lemma** *isMaxim-max-fun-diff*:  $\llbracket f \neq g; f \in \text{FINFUNC}; g \in \text{FINFUNC} \rrbracket \implies$   
 $s.\text{isMaxim } \{a \in \text{Field } s. f\ a \neq g\ a\} (s.\text{max-fun-diff } f\ g)$   
**using** *fun-unequal-in-support*[*of f g*] **unfolding** *max-fun-diff-alt fun-diff-alt fun-eq-iff*  
**by** (*intro s.maxim-isMaxim (auto simp: FinFunc-def fin-support-def support-def)*)

**lemma** *max-fun-diff-in*:  $\llbracket f \neq g; f \in \text{FINFUNC}; g \in \text{FINFUNC} \rrbracket \implies$   
 $s.\text{max-fun-diff } f\ g \in \{a \in \text{Field } s. f\ a \neq g\ a\}$   
**using** *isMaxim-max-fun-diff* **unfolding** *s.isMaxim-def* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *max-fun-diff-max*:  $\llbracket f \neq g; f \in \text{FINFUNC}; g \in \text{FINFUNC}; x \in \{a \in \text{Field } s. f\ a \neq g\ a\} \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(x, s.\text{max-fun-diff } f\ g) \in s$   
**using** *isMaxim-max-fun-diff* **unfolding** *s.isMaxim-def* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *max-fun-diff*:  
 $\llbracket f \neq g; f \in \text{FINFUNC}; g \in \text{FINFUNC} \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(\exists a\ b. a \neq b \wedge a \in \text{Field } r \wedge b \in \text{Field } r \wedge$   
 $f\ (s.\text{max-fun-diff } f\ g) = a \wedge g\ (s.\text{max-fun-diff } f\ g) = b)$   
**using** *isMaxim-max-fun-diff*[*of f g*] **unfolding** *s.isMaxim-def FinFunc-def Func-def*  
**by** *auto*

**lemma** *max-fun-diff-le-eq*:  
 $\llbracket (s.\text{max-fun-diff } f\ g, x) \in s; f \neq g; f \in \text{FINFUNC}; g \in \text{FINFUNC}; x \neq s.\text{max-fun-diff } f\ g \rrbracket \implies$

```

  f x = g x
  using max-fun-diff-max[of f g x] antisymD[OF s.ANTISYM, of s.max-fun-diff f
g x]
  by (auto simp: Field-def)

lemma max-fun-diff-max2:
  assumes ineq: s.max-fun-diff f g = s.max-fun-diff g h  $\longrightarrow$ 
    f (s.max-fun-diff f g)  $\neq$  h (s.max-fun-diff g h) and
    fg: f  $\neq$  g and gh: g  $\neq$  h and fh: f  $\neq$  h and
    f: f  $\in$  FINFUNC and g: g  $\in$  FINFUNC and h: h  $\in$  FINFUNC
  shows s.max-fun-diff f h = s.max2 (s.max-fun-diff f g) (s.max-fun-diff g h)
    (is ?fh = s.max2 ?fg ?gh)
proof (cases ?fg = ?gh)
  case True
  with ineq have f ?fg  $\neq$  h ?fg by simp
  moreover
  { fix x assume x: x  $\in$  {a  $\in$  Field s. f a  $\neq$  h a}
    hence (x, ?fg)  $\in$  s
    proof (cases x = ?fg)
      case False show ?thesis
        by (metis (mono-tags, lifting) True assms(5-7) max-fun-diff-max mem-Collect-eq
x)
    qed (simp add: refl-onD[OF s.REFL])
  }
  ultimately have s.isMaxim {a  $\in$  Field s. f a  $\neq$  h a} ?fg
    unfolding s.isMaxim-def using max-fun-diff-in[OF fg f g] by simp
  hence ?fh = ?fg using isMaxim-max-fun-diff[OF fh f h] by blast
  thus ?thesis unfolding True s.max2-def by simp
next
  case False note * = this
  show ?thesis
  proof (cases (?fg, ?gh)  $\in$  s)
    case True
    hence *: f ?gh = g ?gh by (rule max-fun-diff-le-eq[OF - fg f g *[symmetric]])
    hence s.isMaxim {a  $\in$  Field s. f a  $\neq$  h a} ?gh using isMaxim-max-fun-diff[OF
gh g h]
      isMaxim-max-fun-diff[OF fg f g] transD[OF s.TRANS - True]
    unfolding s.isMaxim-def by auto
    hence ?fh = ?gh using isMaxim-max-fun-diff[OF fh f h] by blast
    thus ?thesis using True unfolding s.max2-def by simp
  next
    case False
    with max-fun-diff-in[OF fg f g] max-fun-diff-in[OF gh g h] have True: (?gh,
?fg)  $\in$  s
    by (blast intro: s.in-notinI)
    hence *: g ?fg = h ?fg by (rule max-fun-diff-le-eq[OF - gh g h *])
    hence s.isMaxim {a  $\in$  Field s. f a  $\neq$  h a} ?fg using isMaxim-max-fun-diff[OF
gh g h]
      isMaxim-max-fun-diff[OF fg f g] True transD[OF s.TRANS, of - - ?fg]

```

```

    unfolding s.isMaxim-def by auto
    hence ?fh = ?fg using isMaxim-max-fun-diff[OF fh f h] by blast
    thus ?thesis using False unfolding s.max2-def by simp
  qed
qed

definition oexp where
  oexp = {(f, g) . f ∈ FINFUNC ∧ g ∈ FINFUNC ∧
    ((let m = s.max-fun-diff f g in (f m, g m) ∈ r) ∨ f = g)}

lemma Field-oexp: Field oexp = FINFUNC
  unfolding oexp-def FinFunc-def by (auto simp: Let-def Field-def)

lemma oexp-Refl: Refl oexp
  unfolding refl-on-def Field-oexp unfolding oexp-def by (auto simp: Let-def)

lemma oexp-trans: trans oexp
proof (unfold trans-def, safe)
  fix f g h :: 'b ⇒ 'a
  let ?fg = s.max-fun-diff f g
  and ?gh = s.max-fun-diff g h
  and ?fh = s.max-fun-diff f h
  assume oexp: (f, g) ∈ oexp (g, h) ∈ oexp
  thus (f, h) ∈ oexp
proof (cases f = g ∨ g = h)
  case False
  with oexp have f ∈ FINFUNC g ∈ FINFUNC h ∈ FINFUNC
    (f ?fg, g ?fg) ∈ r (g ?gh, h ?gh) ∈ r unfolding oexp-def Let-def by auto
  note * = this False
  show ?thesis
proof (cases f ≠ h)
  case True
  show ?thesis
proof (cases ?fg = ?gh ⟶ f ?fg ≠ h ?gh)
  case True
  show ?thesis using max-fun-diff-max2[of f g h, OF True] * ⟨f ≠ h⟩
max-fun-diff-in
    r.max2-iff[OF FINFUNCD FINFUNCD] r.max2-equals1[OF FINFUNCD
FINFUNCD] max-fun-diff-le-eq
    s.in-notinI[OF disjI1] unfolding oexp-def Let-def s.max2-def mem-Collect-eq
by safe metis
  next
  case False with * show ?thesis unfolding oexp-def Let-def
    using antisymD[OF r.ANTISYM, of g ?gh h ?gh] max-fun-diff-in[of g h]
by auto
  qed
  qed (auto simp: oexp-def *(3))
qed auto
qed

```

**lemma** *oexp-Preorder: Preorder oexp*  
**unfolding** *preorder-on-def using oexp-Refl oexp-trans Restr-Field[of oexp] by blast*

**lemma** *oexp-antisym: antisym oexp*  
**proof** (*unfold antisym-def, safe, rule ccontr*)  
**fix**  $f\ g$  **assume**  $(f, g) \in \text{oexp}$   $(g, f) \in \text{oexp}$   $g \neq f$   
**thus** *False using refl-onD[OF r.REFL FINFUNC] max-fun-diff-in unfolding oexp-def Let-def*  
**by** (*auto dest!: antisymD[OF r.ANTISYM] simp: s.max-fun-diff-commute*)  
**qed**

**lemma** *oexp-Partial-order: Partial-order oexp*  
**unfolding** *partial-order-on-def using oexp-Preorder oexp-antisym by blast*

**lemma** *oexp-Total: Total oexp*  
**unfolding** *total-on-def Field-oexp unfolding oexp-def using FINFUNC max-fun-diff-in*  
**by** (*auto simp: Let-def s.max-fun-diff-commute intro!: r.in-notinI*)

**lemma** *oexp-Linear-order: Linear-order oexp*  
**unfolding** *linear-order-on-def using oexp-Partial-order oexp-Total by blast*

**definition** *const = ( $\lambda x.$  if  $x \in \text{Field } s$  then  $r.\text{zero}$  else undefined)*

**lemma** *const-in[simp]:  $x \in \text{Field } s \implies \text{const } x = r.\text{zero}$*   
**unfolding** *const-def by auto*

**lemma** *const-notin[simp]:  $x \notin \text{Field } s \implies \text{const } x = \text{undefined}$*   
**unfolding** *const-def by auto*

**lemma** *const-Int-Field[simp]:  $\text{Field } s \cap - \{x. \text{const } x = r.\text{zero}\} = \{\}$*   
**by** *auto*

**lemma** *const-FINFUNC[simp]:  $\text{Field } r \neq \{\} \implies \text{const} \in \text{FINFUNC}$*   
**unfolding** *FinFunc-def Func-def fin-support-def support-def const-def Int-iff mem-Collect-eq*  
**using** *r.zero-in-Field by (metis (lifting) Collect-empty-eq finite.emptyI)*

**lemma** *const-least:*  
**assumes** *Field  $r \neq \{\}$   $f \in \text{FINFUNC}$*   
**shows**  *$(\text{const}, f) \in \text{oexp}$*   
**using** *assms const-FINFUNC max-fun-diff max-fun-diff-in oexp-def by fastforce*

**lemma** *support-not-const:*  
**assumes**  *$F \subseteq \text{FINFUNC}$  and  $\text{const} \notin F$*   
**shows**  *$\forall f \in F. \text{finite } (\text{SUPP } f) \wedge \text{SUPP } f \neq \{\} \wedge \text{SUPP } f \subseteq \text{Field } s$*   
**proof** (*intro ballI conjI*)  
**fix**  $f$  **assume**  $f \in F$   
**thus** *finite (SUPP  $f$ ) SUPP  $f \subseteq \text{Field } s$*

using *assms(1)* **unfolding** *FinFunc-def fin-support-def support-def* **by** *auto*  
 show  $SUPP\ f \neq \{\}$   
**proof** (*rule ccontr, unfold not-not*)  
 assume  $SUPP\ f = \{\}$   
 moreover from  $\langle f \in F \rangle$  *assms(1)* **have**  $f \in FINFUNC$  **by** *blast*  
 ultimately **have**  $f = const$   
 by (*auto simp: fun-eq-iff support-def FinFunc-def Func-def const-def*)  
 with *assms(2)*  $\langle f \in F \rangle$  **show** *False* **by** *blast*  
**qed**  
**qed**

**lemma** *maxim-isMaxim-support*:  
 assumes  $F \subseteq FINFUNC$  **and**  $const \notin F$   
 shows  $\forall f \in F. s.isMaxim\ (SUPP\ f)\ (s.maxim\ (SUPP\ f))$   
 using *assms s.maxim-isMaxim support-not-const* **by** *force*

**lemma** *oexp-empty2*:  $Field\ s = \{\} \implies oexp = \{(\lambda x. undefined, \lambda x. undefined)\}$   
**unfolding** *oexp-def FinFunc-def fin-support-def support-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *oexp-empty*:  $\llbracket Field\ r = \{\}; Field\ s \neq \{\} \rrbracket \implies oexp = \{\}$   
 using *FINFUNC D oexp-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *fun-upd-FINFUNC*:  $\llbracket f \in FINFUNC; x \in Field\ s; y \in Field\ r \rrbracket \implies f(x := y) \in FINFUNC$   
**unfolding** *FinFunc-def Func-def fin-support-def*  
**by** (*auto intro: finite-subset[OF support-upd-subset]*)

**lemma** *fun-upd-same-oexp*:  
 assumes  $(f, g) \in oexp\ f\ x = g\ x\ x \in Field\ s\ y \in Field\ r$   
 shows  $(f(x := y), g(x := y)) \in oexp$   
**proof** –  
 from *assms(1)* *fun-upd-FINFUNC*[*OF - assms(3,4)*] **have**  $fg: f(x := y) \in FINFUNC\ g(x := y) \in FINFUNC$   
**unfolding** *oexp-def* **by** *auto*  
 moreover from *assms(2)* **have**  $s.max-fun-diff\ (f(x := y))\ (g(x := y)) = s.max-fun-diff\ f\ g$   
**unfolding** *s.max-fun-diff-def* **by** *auto metis*  
 ultimately **show** *?thesis* using *assms refl-onD[OF r.REFL]* **unfolding** *oexp-def Let-def* **by** *auto*  
**qed**

**lemma** *fun-upd-smaller-oexp*:  
 assumes  $f \in FINFUNC\ x \in Field\ s\ y \in Field\ r\ (y, f\ x) \in r$   
 shows  $(f(x := y), f) \in oexp$   
 using *assms fun-upd-FINFUNC*[*OF assms(1-3)*] *s.maxim-singleton*[*of x*]  
**unfolding** *oexp-def FinFunc-def Let-def fin-support-def s.max-fun-diff-def* **by**  
 (*auto simp: fun-eq-iff*)

**lemma** *oexp-wf-Id*:  $wf\ (oexp - Id)$

```

proof (cases Field r = {}  $\vee$  Field s = {})
  case True thus ?thesis using oexp-empty oexp-empty2 by fastforce
next
  case False
  hence Fields: Field s  $\neq$  {} Field r  $\neq$  {} by simp-all
  hence [simp]: r.zero  $\in$  Field r by (intro r.zero-in-Field)
  have const[simp]:  $\bigwedge F. \llbracket \text{const} \in F; F \subseteq \text{FINFUNC} \rrbracket \implies \exists f_0 \in F. \forall f \in F. (f_0, f)$ 
 $\in$  oexp
    using const-least[OF Fields(2)] by auto
  show ?thesis
    unfolding Linear-order-wf-diff-Id[OF oexp-Linear-order] Field-oexp
  proof (intro allI impI)
    fix A assume A:  $A \subseteq \text{FINFUNC}$   $A \neq \{\}$ 
    { fix y F
      have  $F \subseteq \text{FINFUNC} \wedge (\exists f \in F. y = s.\text{maxim} (\text{SUPP } f)) \longrightarrow$ 
         $(\exists f_0 \in F. \forall f \in F. (f_0, f) \in \text{oexp})$  (is ?P F y)
      proof (induct y arbitrary: F rule: s.well-order-induct)
        case (1 y)
        show ?case
        proof (intro impI, elim conjE bexE)
          fix f assume F:  $F \subseteq \text{FINFUNC}$   $f \in F$   $y = s.\text{maxim} (\text{SUPP } f)$ 
          thus  $\exists f_0 \in F. \forall f \in F. (f_0, f) \in \text{oexp}$ 
          proof (cases const  $\in$  F)
            case False
            with F have maxF:  $\forall f \in F. s.\text{isMaxim} (\text{SUPP } f) (s.\text{maxim} (\text{SUPP } f))$ 
              and SUPPF:  $\forall f \in F. \text{finite} (\text{SUPP } f) \wedge \text{SUPP } f \neq \{\} \wedge \text{SUPP } f \subseteq$ 
Field s
              using maxim-isMaxim-support support-not-const by auto
            define z where  $z = s.\text{minim} \{s.\text{maxim} (\text{SUPP } f) \mid f. f \in F\}$ 
            from F SUPPF maxF have zmin:  $s.\text{isMinim} \{s.\text{maxim} (\text{SUPP } f) \mid f. f$ 
 $\in F\}$  z
            unfolding z-def by (intro s.minim-isMinim) (auto simp: s.isMaxim-def)
            with F have zy:  $(z, y) \in s$  unfolding s.isMinim-def by auto
            hence zField:  $z \in \text{Field } s$  unfolding Field-def by auto
            define x0 where  $x_0 = r.\text{minim} \{f z \mid f. f \in F \wedge z = s.\text{maxim} (\text{SUPP}$ 
f)\}
            from F(1,2) maxF(1) SUPPF zmin
            have x0min:  $r.\text{isMinim} \{f z \mid f. f \in F \wedge z = s.\text{maxim} (\text{SUPP } f)\}$  x0
              unfolding x0-def s.isMaxim-def s.isMinim-def
              by (blast intro!: r.minim-isMinim FinFuncD[of - r s])
            with maxF(1) SUPPF F(1) have x0Field:  $x_0 \in \text{Field } r$ 
              unfolding r.isMinim-def s.isMaxim-def by (auto intro!: FINFUNC D)
            from x0min maxF(1) SUPPF F(1) have x0notzero:  $x_0 \neq r.\text{zero}$ 
            unfolding r.isMinim-def s.isMaxim-def FinFunc-def Func-def support-def
              by fastforce
            define G where  $G = \{f(z := r.\text{zero}) \mid f. f \in F \wedge z = s.\text{maxim} (\text{SUPP}$ 
f)  $\wedge f z = x_0\}$ 
            from zmin x0min have  $G \neq \{\}$  unfolding G-def z-def s.isMinim-def
r.isMinim-def by blast

```



```

have GF:  $G \subseteq (\lambda f. f(z := r.zero)) \text{ ' } F$  unfolding  $G\text{-def}$  by auto
have  $G \subseteq \text{fin-support } r.zero$  ( $\text{Field } s$ )
  unfolding  $\text{FinFunc-def fin-support-def}$ 
  using  $F(1)$   $\text{FinFunc-def } G\text{-def fin-support-def}$  by fastforce
moreover from  $F \text{ GF } z\text{Field}$  have  $G \subseteq \text{Func } (\text{Field } s) (\text{Field } r)$ 
  using  $\text{Func-upd}[of - \text{Field } s \text{ Field } r \text{ } z \text{ } r.zero]$  unfolding  $\text{FinFunc-def}$ 
by auto
  ultimately have  $G: G \subseteq \text{FINFUNC}$  unfolding  $\text{FinFunc-def}$  by blast
  hence  $\exists g0 \in G. \forall g \in G. (g0, g) \in \text{oexp}$ 
  proof (cases const  $\in G$ )
    case False
    with  $G$  have  $\text{max}G: \forall g \in G. s.\text{isMaxim } (\text{SUPP } g) (s.\text{maxim } (\text{SUPP } g))$ 
    and  $\text{SUPPG}: \forall g \in G. \text{finite } (\text{SUPP } g) \wedge \text{SUPP } g \neq \{\} \wedge \text{SUPP } g \subseteq$ 
     $\text{Field } s$ 
    using  $\text{maxim-isMaxim-support support-not-const}$  by auto
    define  $y'$  where  $y' = s.\text{minim } \{s.\text{maxim } (\text{SUPP } f) \mid f. f \in G\}$ 
    from  $G \text{ SUPPG } \text{max}G \langle G \neq \{\} \rangle$  have  $y'\text{min}: s.\text{isMinim } \{s.\text{maxim } (\text{SUPP } f) \mid f. f \in G\} y'$ 
    unfolding  $y'\text{-def}$  by (intro s.minim-isMinim) (auto simp: s.isMaxim-def)
    moreover
    have  $\forall g \in G. z \notin \text{SUPP } g$  unfolding  $\text{support-def } G\text{-def}$  by auto
    moreover
    { fix }  $g$  assume  $g: g \in G$ 
    then obtain  $f$  where  $f \in F \text{ } g = f(z := r.zero)$  and  $z: z = s.\text{maxim } (\text{SUPP } f)$ 
    unfolding  $G\text{-def}$  by auto
    with  $\text{SUPPF } b\text{spec}[OF \text{ SUPPG } g]$  have  $(s.\text{maxim } (\text{SUPP } g), z) \in s$ 
    unfolding  $z$  by (intro s.maxim-mono) auto
    }
    moreover from  $y'\text{min}$  have  $\bigwedge g. g \in G \implies (y', s.\text{maxim } (\text{SUPP } g))$ 
     $\in s$ 
    unfolding  $s.\text{isMinim-def}$  by auto
    ultimately have  $y' \neq z (y', z) \in s$  using  $\text{max}G$ 
    unfolding  $s.\text{isMinim-def } s.\text{isMaxim-def}$  by auto
    with  $zy$  have  $y' \neq y (y', y) \in s$  using  $\text{antisymD}[OF s.ANTISYM]$ 
     $\text{transD}[OF s.TRANS]$ 
    by blast+
    moreover from  $\langle G \neq \{\} \rangle$  have  $\exists g \in G. y' = \text{wo-rel.maxim } s (\text{SUPP } g)$ 
    using  $y'\text{min}$ 
    by (auto simp: G-def s.isMinim-def)
    ultimately show  $?thesis$  using  $\text{mp}[OF \text{ spec}[OF \text{ mp}[OF \text{ spec}[OF 1]]],$ 
     $\text{of } y' \text{ } G]$   $G$  by auto
    qed simp
    then obtain  $g0$  where  $g0: g0 \in G \forall g \in G. (g0, g) \in \text{oexp}$  by blast
    hence  $g0z: g0 \text{ } z = r.zero$  unfolding  $G\text{-def}$  by auto
    define  $f0$  where  $f0 = g0(z := x0)$ 
    with  $x0\text{notzero } z\text{Field}$  have  $\text{SUPP}: \text{SUPP } f0 = \text{SUPP } g0 \cup \{z\}$  unfolding
     $\text{support-def}$  by auto

```

```

    from g0z have f0z: f0(z := r.zero) = g0 unfolding f0-def fun-upd-upd
  by auto
    have f0: f0 ∈ F using x0min g0(1)
      Func-elim[OF subsetD[OF subset-trans[OF F(1)[unfolded FinFunc-def]
Int-lower1]] zField]
    unfolding f0-def r.isMinim-def G-def by (force simp: fun-upd-idem)
    from g0(1) maxF(1) have maxf0: s.maxim (SUPP f0) = z unfolding
SUPP G-def
    by (intro s.maxim-equality) (auto simp: s.isMaxim-def)
  show ?thesis
  proof (intro bexI[OF - f0] ballI)
    fix f assume f: f ∈ F
    show (f0, f) ∈ oexp
    proof (cases f0 = f)
    case True thus ?thesis by (metis F(1) Field-oexp f0 in-mono oexp-Refl
refl-onD)
    next
    case False
    thus ?thesis
    proof (cases s.maxim (SUPP f) = z ∧ f z = x0)
    case True
    with f have f(z := r.zero) ∈ G unfolding G-def by blast
    with g0(2) f0z have (f0(z := r.zero), f(z := r.zero)) ∈ oexp by
auto
    hence oexp: (f0(z := r.zero), z := x0), f(z := r.zero), z := x0) ∈
oexp
    by (elim fun-upd-same-oexp[OF - - zField x0Field]) simp
    with f F(1) x0min True
    have (f(z := x0), f) ∈ oexp unfolding G-def r.isMinim-def
    by (intro fun-upd-smaller-oexp[OF - zField x0Field]) auto
    with oexp show ?thesis using transD[OF oexp-trans, of f0 f(z :=
x0) f]
    unfolding f0-def by auto
  next
    case False note notG = this
    thus ?thesis
    proof (cases s.maxim (SUPP f) = z)
    case True
    with notG have f0 z ≠ f z unfolding f0-def by auto
    hence f0 z ≠ f z by metis
    with True maxf0 f0 f SUPPF have s.max-fun-diff f0 f = z
    using s.maxim-Un[of SUPP f0 SUPP f, unfolded s.max2-def]
    unfolding max-fun-diff-alt by (intro trans[OF s.maxim-Int])
    auto
    moreover
    from x0min True f have (x0, f z) ∈ r unfolding r.isMinim-def
    by auto
    ultimately show ?thesis using f f0 F(1) unfolding oexp-def
f0-def by auto

```

```

next
case False
  with notG have *: (z, s.maxim (SUPP f)) ∈ s z ≠ s.maxim
(SUPP f)
    using zmin f unfolding s.isMinim-def G-def by auto
  have f0f: f0 (s.maxim (SUPP f)) = r.zero
  proof (rule ccontr)
    assume f0 (s.maxim (SUPP f)) ≠ r.zero
    with f SUPPF maxF(1) have s.maxim (SUPP f) ∈ SUPP f0
      unfolding support-def[of - - f0] s.isMaxim-def by auto
    with SUPPF f0 have (s.maxim (SUPP f), z) ∈ s unfolding
maxf0[symmetric]
      by (auto intro: s.maxim-greatest)
    with * antisymD[OF s.ANTISYM] show False by simp
  qed
  moreover
  have f (s.maxim (SUPP f)) ≠ r.zero
    using bspec[OF maxF(1) f, unfolded s.isMaxim-def] by (auto
simp: support-def)
  with f0f * f f0 maxf0 SUPPF
  have s.max-fun-diff f0 f = s.maxim (SUPP f0 ∪ SUPP f)
    unfolding max-fun-diff-alt using s.maxim-Un[of SUPP f0 SUPP
f]
    by (intro s.maxim-Int) (auto simp: s.max2-def)
  moreover have s.maxim (SUPP f0 ∪ SUPP f) = s.maxim (SUPP
f)
    using s.maxim-Un[of SUPP f0 SUPP f] * maxf0 SUPPF f0 f
    by (auto simp: s.max2-def)
    ultimately show ?thesis using f f0 F(1) maxF(1) SUPPF
unfolding oexp-def Let-def
    by (fastforce simp: s.isMaxim-def intro!: r.zero-smallest
FINFUNCD)
  qed
  qed
  qed
  qed
  qed simp
  qed
  qed
}
with A show ∃ a ∈ A. ∀ a' ∈ A. (a, a') ∈ oexp
  by blast
qed
qed
qed
lemma oexp-Well-order: Well-order oexp
  unfolding well-order-on-def using oexp-Linear-order oexp-wf-Id by blast
interpretation o: wo-rel oexp by unfold-locales (rule oexp-Well-order)

```

```

lemma zero-oezp: Field  $r \neq \{\}$   $\implies$   $o.zero = const$ 
  by (metis Field-oezp const-FINFUNC const-least o.Field-ofilter o.equals-minim
o.ofilter-def o.zero-def)

end

notation wo-rel2.oezp (infixl  $\langle \hat{\ } o \rangle$  90)
lemmas oezp-def = wo-rel2.oezp-def[unfolded wo-rel2-def, OF conjI]
lemmas oezp-Well-order = wo-rel2.oezp-Well-order[unfolded wo-rel2-def, OF conjI]
lemmas Field-oezp = wo-rel2.Field-oezp[unfolded wo-rel2-def, OF conjI]

definition ozero =  $\{\}$ 

lemma ozero-Well-order[simp]: Well-order ozero
  unfolding ozero-def by simp

lemma ozero-ordIso[simp]:  $ozero =_o ozero$ 
  unfolding ozero-def ordIso-def iso-def[abs-def] embed-def bij-betw-def by auto

lemma Field-ozero[simp]: Field ozero =  $\{\}$ 
  unfolding ozero-def by simp

lemma iso-ozero-empty[simp]:  $r =_o ozero = (r = \{\})$ 
  unfolding ozero-def ordIso-def iso-def[abs-def] embed-def bij-betw-def
by (auto dest: well-order-on-domain)

lemma ozero-ordLeq:
  assumes Well-order  $r$  shows  $ozero \leq_o r$ 
  using assms unfolding ozero-def ordLeq-def embed-def[abs-def] under-def by
auto

definition oone =  $\{(( ), ( ))\}$ 

lemma oone-Well-order[simp]: Well-order oone
  unfolding oone-def unfolding well-order-on-def linear-order-on-def partial-order-on-def
preorder-on-def total-on-def refl-on-def trans-def antisym-def by auto

lemma Field-oone[simp]: Field oone =  $\{( )\}$ 
  unfolding oone-def by simp

lemma oone-ordIso:  $oone =_o \{(x, x)\}$ 
  unfolding ordIso-def oone-def well-order-on-def linear-order-on-def partial-order-on-def
preorder-on-def total-on-def refl-on-def trans-def antisym-def
by (auto simp: iso-def embed-def bij-betw-def under-def inj-on-def intro!: exI[of -
 $\lambda -. x$ ])

lemma osum-ordLeqR: Well-order  $r \implies$  Well-order  $s \implies s \leq_o r +_o s$ 
  unfolding ordLeq-def2 underS-def

```

by (auto intro!: exI[of - Inr] osum-Well-order) (auto simp add: osum-def Field-def)

**lemma** *osum-congL*:  
 assumes  $r =_o s$  and  $t$ : Well-order  $t$   
 shows  $r +_o t =_o s +_o t$  (is ?L =<sub>o</sub> ?R)  
**proof** –  
 from *assms*(1) obtain  $f$  where  $r$ : Well-order  $r$  and  $s$ : Well-order  $s$  and  $f$ : iso  
 $r\ s\ f$   
 unfolding *ordIso-def* by blast  
 let  $?f = \text{map-sum } f\ \text{id}$   
 from  $f$  have *inj-on* ? $f$  (Field ?L)  
 unfolding *Field-osum iso-def bij-betw-def inj-on-def* by fastforce  
 with  $f$  have *bij-betw* ? $f$  (Field ?L) (Field ?R)  
 unfolding *Field-osum iso-def bij-betw-def image-image image-Un* by auto  
 moreover from  $f$  have *compat* ?L ?R ? $f$   
 unfolding *osum-def iso-iff3[OF r s] compat-def bij-betw-def*  
 by (auto simp: *map-prod-imageI*)  
 ultimately have *iso* ?L ?R ? $f$  by (subst *iso-iff3*) (auto intro: *osum-Well-order*  
 $r\ s\ t$ )  
 thus ?thesis unfolding *ordIso-def* by (auto intro: *osum-Well-order r s t*)  
**qed**

**lemma** *osum-congR*:  
 assumes  $r =_o s$  and  $t$ : Well-order  $t$   
 shows  $t +_o r =_o t +_o s$  (is ?L =<sub>o</sub> ?R)  
**proof** –  
 from *assms*(1) obtain  $f$  where  $r$ : Well-order  $r$  and  $s$ : Well-order  $s$  and  $f$ : iso  
 $r\ s\ f$   
 unfolding *ordIso-def* by blast  
 let  $?f = \text{map-sum } \text{id } f$   
 from  $f$  have *inj-on* ? $f$  (Field ?L)  
 unfolding *Field-osum iso-def bij-betw-def inj-on-def* by fastforce  
 with  $f$  have *bij-betw* ? $f$  (Field ?L) (Field ?R)  
 unfolding *Field-osum iso-def bij-betw-def image-image image-Un* by auto  
 moreover from  $f$  have *compat* ?L ?R ? $f$   
 unfolding *osum-def iso-iff3[OF r s] compat-def bij-betw-def*  
 by (auto simp: *map-prod-imageI*)  
 ultimately have *iso* ?L ?R ? $f$  by (subst *iso-iff3*) (auto intro: *osum-Well-order*  
 $r\ s\ t$ )  
 thus ?thesis unfolding *ordIso-def* by (auto intro: *osum-Well-order r s t*)  
**qed**

**lemma** *osum-cong*:  
 assumes  $t =_o u$  and  $r =_o s$   
 shows  $t +_o r =_o u +_o s$   
 using *ordIso-transitive[OF osum-congL[OF assms(1)] osum-congR[OF assms(2)]]*  
*assms[unfolded ordIso-def]* by auto

**lemma** *Well-order-empty[simp]*: Well-order  $\{\}$

**unfolding** *Field-empty* **by** (rule *well-order-on-empty*)

**lemma** *well-order-on-singleton*[simp]: *well-order-on* {*x*} {(*x*, *x*)}

**unfolding** *well-order-on-def linear-order-on-def partial-order-on-def preorder-on-def total-on-def*

*Field-def refl-on-def trans-def antisym-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *oexp-empty*[simp]:

**assumes** *Well-order* *r*

**shows**  $r \hat{\circ} \{\} = \{(\lambda x. \text{undefined}, \lambda x. \text{undefined})\}$

**unfolding** *oexp-def[OF assms Well-order-empty]* *FinFunc-def fin-support-def support-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *oexp-empty2*[simp]:

**assumes** *Well-order* *r*  $r \neq \{\}$

**shows**  $\{\} \hat{\circ} r = \{\}$

**proof** –

**from** *assms*(2) **have** *Field*  $r \neq \{\}$  **unfolding** *Field-def* **by** *auto*

**thus** *?thesis*

**by** (simp add: *assms*(1) *wo-rel2.intro wo-rel2.oexp-empty*)

**qed**

**lemma** *oprod-zero*[simp]:  $\{\} * o r = \{\} r * o \{\} = \{\}$

**unfolding** *oprod-def* **by** *simp-all*

**lemma** *oprod-congL*:

**assumes**  $r = o s$  **and** *t*: *Well-order* *t*

**shows**  $r * o t = o s * o t$  (is  $?L = o ?R$ )

**proof** –

**from** *assms*(1) **obtain** *f* **where** *r*: *Well-order* *r* **and** *s*: *Well-order* *s* **and** *f*: *iso* *r s f*

**unfolding** *ordIso-def* **by** *blast*

**let**  $?f = \text{map-prod } f \text{ id}$

**from** *f* **have** *inj-on*  $?f$  (*Field*  $?L$ )

**unfolding** *Field-oprod iso-def bij-betw-def inj-on-def* **by** *fastforce*

**with** *f* **have** *bij-betw*  $?f$  (*Field*  $?L$ ) (*Field*  $?R$ )

**unfolding** *Field-oprod iso-def bij-betw-def* **by** (auto intro!: *map-prod-surj-on*)

**moreover from** *f* **have** *compat*  $?L ?R ?f$

**unfolding** *iso-iff3[OF r s]* *compat-def oprod-def bij-betw-def*

**by** (auto simp: *map-prod-imageI*)

**ultimately have** *iso*  $?L ?R ?f$  **by** (subst *iso-iff3*) (auto intro: *oprod-Well-order r s t*)

**thus** *?thesis* **unfolding** *ordIso-def* **by** (auto intro: *oprod-Well-order r s t*)

**qed**

**lemma** *oprod-congR*:

**assumes**  $r = o s$  **and** *t*: *Well-order* *t*

**shows**  $t * o r = o t * o s$  (is  $?L = o ?R$ )

**proof** –

**from** *assms(1)* **obtain** *f* **where** *r*: *Well-order r* **and** *s*: *Well-order s* **and** *f*: *iso*  
*r s f*  
**unfolding** *ordIso-def* **by** *blast*  
**let** *?f* = *map-prod id f*  
**from** *f* **have** *inj-on ?f (Field ?L)*  
**unfolding** *Field-oprod iso-def bij-betw-def inj-on-def* **by** *fastforce*  
**with** *f* **have** *bij-betw ?f (Field ?L) (Field ?R)*  
**unfolding** *Field-oprod iso-def bij-betw-def* **by** *(auto intro!: map-prod-surj-on)*  
**moreover from** *f well-order-on-domain[OF r]* **have** *compat ?L ?R ?f*  
**unfolding** *iso-iff3[OF r s] compat-def oprod-def bij-betw-def*  
**by** *(auto simp: map-prod-imageI dest: inj-onD)*  
**ultimately have** *iso ?L ?R ?f* **by** *(subst iso-iff3) (auto intro: oprod-Well-order*  
*r s t)*  
**thus** *?thesis* **unfolding** *ordIso-def* **by** *(auto intro: oprod-Well-order r s t)*  
**qed**

**lemma** *oprod-cong*:  
**assumes** *t =o u* **and** *r =o s*  
**shows** *t \*o r =o u \*o s*  
**using** *ordIso-transitive[OF oprod-congL[OF assms(1)] oprod-congR[OF assms(2)]]*  
*assms[unfolded ordIso-def]* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *Field-singleton[simp]*: *Field {(z,z)} = {z}*  
**by** *(metis well-order-on-Field well-order-on-singleton)*

**lemma** *zero-singleton[simp]*: *zero {(z,z)} = z*  
**using** *wo-rel.zero-in-Field[unfolded wo-rel-def, of {(z,z)}]* *well-order-on-singleton[of*  
*z]*  
**by** *auto*

**lemma** *FinFunc-singleton*: *FinFunc {(z,z)} s = {λx. if x ∈ Field s then z else*  
*undefined}*  
**unfolding** *FinFunc-def Func-def fin-support-def support-def*  
**by** *(auto simp: fun-eq-iff split: if-split-asm intro!: finite-subset[of - { }])*

**lemma** *oone-ordIso-oeq*:  
**assumes** *r =o oone* **and** *s*: *Well-order s*  
**shows** *r  $\hat{=}$ o s =o oone* **(is** *?L =o ?R)*  
**proof** –  
**from** *⟨r =o oone⟩* **obtain** *f* **where** *\**:  $\forall x \in \text{Field } r. \forall y \in \text{Field } r. x = y$  **and** *f* ‘  
*Field r = {()}*  
**and** *r*: *Well-order r*  
**unfolding** *ordIso-def oone-def* **by** *(auto simp add: iso-def [abs-def] bij-betw-def*  
*inj-on-def)*  
**then obtain** *x* **where** *x ∈ Field r* **by** *auto*  
**with** *\** **have** *Fr: Field r = {x}* **by** *auto*  
**interpret** *r*: *wo-rel r* **by** *unfold-locale (rule r)*  
**from** *Fr well-order-on-domain[OF r] refl-onD[OF r.REFL, of x]* **have** *r-def: r*  
*= {(x, x)}* **by** *fast*

```

interpret wo-rel2 r s by unfold-locales (rule r, rule s)
have bij-betw ( $\lambda x. ()$ ) (Field ?L) (Field ?R)
  unfolding bij-betw-def Field-oexp by (auto simp: r-def FinFunc-singleton)
moreover have compat ?L ?R ( $\lambda x. ()$ ) unfolding compat-def oone-def by auto
ultimately have iso ?L ?R ( $\lambda x. ()$ ) using s oone-Well-order
  by (subst iso-iff3) (auto intro: oexp-Well-order)
thus ?thesis using s oone-Well-order unfolding ordIso-def by (auto intro:
oexp-Well-order)
qed

```

```

context
  fixes r s t
  assumes r: Well-order r
  assumes s: Well-order s
  assumes t: Well-order t
begin

```

```

lemma osum-zeroL: ozero +o r =o r
  using r unfolding osum-def ozero-def by (auto intro: map-prod-ordIso)

```

```

lemma osum-zeroR: r +o ozero =o r
  using r unfolding osum-def ozero-def by (auto intro: map-prod-ordIso)

```

```

lemma osum-assoc: (r +o s) +o t =o r +o s +o t (is ?L =o ?R)

```

```

proof -
  let ?f =
     $\lambda rst. \text{case } rst \text{ of } Inl (Inl r) \Rightarrow Inl r \mid Inl (Inr s) \Rightarrow Inr (Inl s) \mid Inr t \Rightarrow Inr (Inr t)$ 
  have bij-betw ?f (Field ?L) (Field ?R)
    unfolding Field-osum bij-betw-def inj-on-def by (auto simp: image-Un image-iff)
  moreover
  have compat ?L ?R ?f
  proof (unfold compat-def, safe)
    fix a b
    assume (a, b)  $\in$  ?L
    thus (?f a, ?f b)  $\in$  ?R
      unfolding osum-def[of r +o s t] osum-def[of r s +o t] Field-osum
      unfolding osum-def Field-osum image-iff image-Un map-prod-def
      by fastforce
  qed
  ultimately have iso ?L ?R ?f using r s t by (subst iso-iff3) (auto intro:
osum-Well-order)
  thus ?thesis using r s t unfolding ordIso-def by (auto intro: osum-Well-order)
qed

```

```

lemma osum-monoR:
  assumes s <o t

```



shows  $r + o s < o r + o t$  (is  $?L < o ?R$ )  
**proof** –  
 from *assms* obtain  $f$  where  $s$ : *Well-order*  $s$  and  $t$ : *Well-order*  $t$  and  $embedS s$   
 $t f$   
 unfolding *ordLess-def* by *blast*  
 hence \*:  $inj-on f (Field s) compat s t f ofilter t (f ' Field s) f ' Field s \subset Field t$   
 using *embed-iff-compat-inj-on-ofilter*[*OF*  $s t$ , *of*  $f$ ] *embedS-iff*[*OF*  $s$ , *of*  $t f$ ]  
 unfolding *embedS-def* by *auto*  
 let  $?f = map-sum id f$   
 from \*(1) have  $inj-on ?f (Field ?L)$  unfolding *Field-osum inj-on-def* by *fastforce*  
 moreover  
 from \*(2,4) have  $compat ?L ?R ?f$  unfolding *compat-def osum-def map-prod-def*  
 by *fastforce*  
 moreover  
 interpret  $t$ : *wo-rel*  $t$  by *unfold-locales* (rule  $t$ )  
 interpret  $rt$ : *wo-rel*  $?R$  by *unfold-locales* (rule *osum-Well-order*[*OF*  $r t$ ])  
 from \*(3) have  $ofilter ?R (?f ' Field ?L)$   
 unfolding *t.ofilter-def rt.ofilter-def Field-osum image-Un image-image under-def*  
 by (auto simp: *osum-def intro!*: *imageI*) (auto simp: *Field-def*)  
 ultimately have  $embed ?L ?R ?f$  using *embed-iff-compat-inj-on-ofilter*[*of*  $?L ?R ?f$ ]  
 by (auto intro: *osum-Well-order r s t*)  
 moreover  
 from \*(4) have  $?f ' Field ?L \subset Field ?R$  unfolding *Field-osum image-Un image-image* by *auto*  
 ultimately have  $embedS ?L ?R ?f$  using *embedS-iff*[*OF* *osum-Well-order*[*OF*  $r s$ ], *of*  $?R ?f$ ] by *auto*  
 thus  $?thesis$  unfolding *ordLess-def* by (auto intro: *osum-Well-order r s t*)  
 qed

**lemma** *osum-monoL*:

assumes  $r \leq o s$

shows  $r + o t \leq o s + o t$

**proof** –

from *assms* obtain  $f$  where  $f$ :  $\forall a \in Field r. f a \in Field s \wedge f ' underS r a \subseteq underS s (f a)$

unfolding *ordLeq-def2* by *blast*

let  $?f = map-sum f id$

from  $f$  have  $\forall a \in Field (r + o t).$

$?f a \in Field (s + o t) \wedge ?f ' underS (r + o t) a \subseteq underS (s + o t) (?f a)$

unfolding *Field-osum underS-def* by (fastforce simp: *osum-def*)

thus  $?thesis$  unfolding *ordLeq-def2* by (auto intro: *osum-Well-order r s t*)

qed

**lemma** *oprod-ozeroL*:  $ozero * o r = o ozero$

using *ozero-ordIso* unfolding *ozero-def* by *simp*

**lemma** *oprod-ozeroR*:  $r * o \text{ ozero} = o \text{ ozero}$   
**using** *ozero-ordIso* **unfolding** *ozero-def* **by** *simp*

**lemma** *oprod-ooneR*:  $r * o \text{ oone} = o \text{ r}$  (**is**  $?L = o \text{ ?R}$ )  
**proof** –  
**have** *bij-betw fst* (*Field*  $?L$ ) (*Field*  $?R$ ) **unfolding** *Field-oprod bij-betw-def inj-on-def*  
**by** *simp*  
**moreover** **have** *compat*  $?L \text{ ?R fst}$  **unfolding** *compat-def oprod-def* **by** *auto*  
**ultimately** **have** *iso*  $?L \text{ ?R fst}$  **using** *r oone-Well-order*  
**by** (*subst iso-iff3*) (*auto intro: oprod-Well-order*)  
**thus** *?thesis* **using** *r oone-Well-order* **unfolding** *ordIso-def* **by** (*auto intro: oprod-Well-order*)  
**qed**

**lemma** *oprod-ooneL*:  $\text{oone} * o \text{ r} = o \text{ r}$  (**is**  $?L = o \text{ ?R}$ )  
**proof** –  
**have** *bij-betw snd* (*Field*  $?L$ ) (*Field*  $?R$ ) **unfolding** *Field-oprod bij-betw-def inj-on-def* **by** *simp*  
**moreover** **have** *Refl r* **by** (*rule wo-rel.REFL[unfolded wo-rel-def, OF r]*)  
**hence** *compat*  $?L \text{ ?R snd}$  **unfolding** *compat-def oprod-def refl-on-def* **by** *auto*  
**ultimately** **have** *iso*  $?L \text{ ?R snd}$  **using** *r oone-Well-order*  
**by** (*subst iso-iff3*) (*auto intro: oprod-Well-order*)  
**thus** *?thesis* **using** *r oone-Well-order* **unfolding** *ordIso-def* **by** (*auto intro: oprod-Well-order*)  
**qed**

**lemma** *oprod-monoR*:  
**assumes**  $\text{ozero} < o \text{ r s} < o \text{ t}$   
**shows**  $r * o \text{ s} < o \text{ r} * o \text{ t}$  (**is**  $?L < o \text{ ?R}$ )  
**proof** –  
**from** *assms* **obtain** *f* **where** *s*: *Well-order s* **and** *t*: *Well-order t* **and** *embedS s t f*  
**unfolding** *ordLess-def* **by** *blast*  
**hence**  $*$ : *inj-on f* (*Field* *s*) *compat s t f ofilter t* (*f* ‘ *Field s*) *f* ‘ *Field s*  $\subset$  *Field t*  
**using** *embed-iff-compat-inj-on-ofilter* [*OF s t, of f*] *embedS-iff* [*OF s, of t f*]  
**unfolding** *embedS-def* **by** *auto*  
**let**  $?f = \text{map-prod id } f$   
**from**  $*(1)$  **have** *inj-on ?f* (*Field*  $?L$ ) **unfolding** *Field-oprod inj-on-def* **by** *fast-force*  
**moreover**  
**from**  $*(2,4)$  *the-inv-into-f-f* [*OF*  $*(1)$ ] **have** *compat*  $?L \text{ ?R ?f}$  **unfolding** *compat-def oprod-def*  
**by** *auto* (*metis well-order-on-domain t, metis well-order-on-domain s*)  
**moreover**  
**interpret** *t*: *wo-rel t* **by** *unfold-locales* (*rule t*)  
**interpret** *rt*: *wo-rel ?R* **by** *unfold-locales* (*rule oprod-Well-order* [*OF r t*])  
**from**  $*(3)$  **have** *ofilter ?R* ( $?f$  ‘ *Field*  $?L$ )  
**unfolding** *t.ofilter-def rt.ofilter-def Field-oprod under-def*  
**by** (*auto simp: oprod-def image-iff*) (*fast | metis r well-order-on-domain*) +

ultimately have  $\text{embed } ?L \ ?R \ ?f$  using  $\text{embed-iff-compat-inj-on-ofilter}[of \ ?L \ ?R \ ?f]$   
 by (auto intro:  $\text{oprod-Well-order } r \ s \ t$ )  
 moreover  
 from  $\text{not-ordLess-ordIso}[OF \ \text{assms}(1)]$  have  $r \neq \{\}$  by (metis  $\text{ozero-def ozero-ordIso}$ )  
 hence  $\text{Field } r \neq \{\}$  unfolding  $\text{Field-def}$  by auto  
 with  $*(4)$  have  $?f' : \text{Field } ?L \subset \text{Field } ?R$  unfolding  $\text{Field-oprod}$   
 by auto (metis  $\text{SigmaD2 SigmaI map-prod-surj-on}$ )  
 ultimately have  $\text{embedS } ?L \ ?R \ ?f$  using  $\text{embedS-iff}[OF \ \text{oprod-Well-order}[OF \ r \ s], of \ ?R \ ?f]$  by auto  
 thus  $?thesis$  unfolding  $\text{ordLess-def}$  by (auto intro:  $\text{oprod-Well-order } r \ s \ t$ )  
 qed

lemma  $\text{oprod-monoL}$ :

assumes  $r \leq_o s$

shows  $r * o \ t \leq_o s * o \ t$

proof –

from  $\text{assms}$  obtain  $f$  where  $f: \forall a \in \text{Field } r. f \ a \in \text{Field } s \wedge f' \text{ underS } r \ a \subseteq \text{underS } s \ (f \ a)$

unfolding  $\text{ordLeq-def2}$  by blast

let  $?f = \text{map-prod } f \ \text{id}$

from  $f$  have  $\forall a \in \text{Field } (r * o \ t).$

$?f \ a \in \text{Field } (s * o \ t) \wedge ?f' \text{ underS } (r * o \ t) \ a \subseteq \text{underS } (s * o \ t) \ (?f \ a)$

unfolding  $\text{Field-oprod underS-def}$  unfolding  $\text{map-prod-def oprod-def}$  by auto

thus  $?thesis$  unfolding  $\text{ordLeq-def2}$  by (auto intro:  $\text{oprod-Well-order } r \ s \ t$ )

qed

lemma  $\text{oprod-assoc}$ :  $(r * o \ s) * o \ t =_o r * o \ s * o \ t$  (is  $?L =_o ?R$ )

proof –

let  $?f = \lambda((a,b),c). (a,b,c)$

have  $\text{bij-betw } ?f \ (\text{Field } ?L) \ (\text{Field } ?R)$

unfolding  $\text{Field-oprod bij-betw-def inj-on-def}$  by (auto simp:  $\text{image-Un image-iff}$ )

moreover

have  $\text{compat } ?L \ ?R \ ?f$

proof (unfold  $\text{compat-def}$ , safe)

fix  $a1 \ a2 \ a3 \ b1 \ b2 \ b3$

assume  $((a1, a2), a3), ((b1, b2), b3) \in ?L$

thus  $((a1, a2, a3), (b1, b2, b3)) \in ?R$

unfolding  $\text{oprod-def}[of \ r * o \ s \ t] \ \text{oprod-def}[of \ r \ s * o \ t] \ \text{Field-oprod}$

unfolding  $\text{oprod-def Field-oprod image-iff image-Un}$  by fast

qed

ultimately have  $\text{iso } ?L \ ?R \ ?f$  using  $r \ s \ t$  by (subst  $\text{iso-iff3}$ ) (auto intro:  $\text{oprod-Well-order}$ )

thus  $?thesis$  using  $r \ s \ t$  unfolding  $\text{ordIso-def}$  by (auto intro:  $\text{oprod-Well-order}$ )

qed

lemma  $\text{oprod-osum}$ :  $r * o \ (s + o \ t) =_o r * o \ s + o \ r * o \ t$  (is  $?L =_o ?R$ )

proof –

```

let ?f =  $\lambda(a,bc).$  case bc of Inl b  $\Rightarrow$  Inl (a, b) | Inr c  $\Rightarrow$  Inr (a, c)
have bij-betw ?f (Field ?L) (Field ?R) unfolding Field-oprod Field-osum bij-betw-def
inj-on-def
  by (fastforce simp: image-Un image-iff split: sum.splits)
moreover
have compat ?L ?R ?f
proof (unfold compat-def, intro allI impI)
  fix a b
  assume (a, b)  $\in$  ?L
  thus (?f a, ?f b)  $\in$  ?R
  unfolding oprod-def[of r s +o t] osum-def[of r *o s r *o t] Field-oprod
Field-osum
  unfolding oprod-def osum-def Field-oprod Field-osum image-iff image-Un by
auto
qed
ultimately have iso ?L ?R ?f using r s t
  by (subst iso-iff3) (auto intro: oprod-Well-order osum-Well-order)
  thus ?thesis using r s t unfolding ordIso-def by (auto intro: oprod-Well-order
osum-Well-order)
qed

lemma ozero-oexp:  $\neg (s =_o \text{ozero}) \implies \text{ozero} \hat{=}_o s =_o \text{ozero}$ 
  by (fastforce simp add: oexp-def[OF zzero-Well-order s] FinFunc-def Func-def
intro: FieldI1)

lemma oone-oexp:  $\text{oone} \hat{=}_o s =_o \text{oone}$  (is ?L =o ?R)
  by (rule oone-ordIso-oexp[OF ordIso-reflexive[OF oone-Well-order] s])

lemma oexp-monoR:
  assumes  $\text{oone} <_o r s <_o t$ 
  shows  $r \hat{=}_o s <_o r \hat{=}_o t$  (is ?L <o ?R)
proof –
  interpret rs: wo-rel2 r s by unfold-locales (rule r, rule s)
  interpret rt: wo-rel2 r t by unfold-locales (rule r, rule t)
  interpret rexpt: wo-rel r  $\hat{=}_o t$  by unfold-locales (rule rt.oexp-Well-order)
  interpret r: wo-rel r by unfold-locales (rule r)
  interpret s: wo-rel s by unfold-locales (rule s)
  interpret t: wo-rel t by unfold-locales (rule t)
  have Field r  $\neq$  {} by (metis assms(1) internalize-ordLess not-psubset-empty)
  moreover
  { assume Field r = {r.zero}
    hence r = {(r.zero, r.zero)} using refl-onD[OF r.REFL, of r.zero] unfolding
Field-def by auto
    hence r =o oone by (metis oone-ordIso ordIso-symmetric)
    with not-ordLess-ordIso[OF assms(1)] have False by (metis ordIso-symmetric)
  }
  ultimately obtain x where x: x  $\in$  Field r r.zero  $\in$  Field r x  $\neq$  r.zero
  by (metis insert-iff r.zero-in-Field subsetI subset-singletonD)
  moreover from assms(2) obtain f where embedS s t f unfolding ordLess-def

```

```

by blast
hence *: inj-on f (Field s) compat s t f ofilter t (f ' Field s) f ' Field s  $\subset$  Field t
  using embed-iff-compat-inj-on-ofilter[OF s t, of f] embedS-iff[OF s, of t f]
  unfolding embedS-def by auto
note invff = the-inv-into-f-f[OF *(1)] and injfD = inj-onD[OF *(1)]
define F where [abs-def]: F g z =
  (if z  $\in$  f ' Field s then g (the-inv-into (Field s) f z)
   else if z  $\in$  Field t then r.zero else undefined) for g z
from *(4) x(2) the-inv-into-f-eq[OF *(1)] have FLR: F ' Field ?L  $\subseteq$  Field ?R
  unfolding rt.Field-oxp rs.Field-oxp FinFunc-def Func-def fin-support-def sup-
  port-def F-def
  by (fastforce split: option.splits if-split-asm elim!: finite-surj[of - - f])
have inj-on F (Field ?L) unfolding rs.Field-oxp inj-on-def fun-eq-iff
proof safe
  fix g h x assume g  $\in$  FinFunc r s h  $\in$  FinFunc r s  $\forall y. F g y = F h y$ 
  with invff show g x = h x unfolding F-def fun-eq-iff FinFunc-def Func-def
  by auto (metis image-eqI)
qed
moreover
have compat ?L ?R F unfolding compat-def rs.oxp-def rt.oxp-def
proof (safe elim!: bspec[OF iffD1[OF image-subset-iff FLR[unfolded rs.Field-oxp
rt.Field-oxp]]])
  fix g h assume gh: g  $\in$  FinFunc r s h  $\in$  FinFunc r s F g  $\neq$  F h
  let m = s.max-fun-diff g h in (g m, h m)  $\in$  r
  hence g  $\neq$  h by auto
  note max-fun-diff-in = rs.max-fun-diff-in[OF <g  $\neq$  h> gh(1,2)]
  and max-fun-diff-max = rs.max-fun-diff-max[OF <g  $\neq$  h> gh(1,2)]
  with *(4) invff *(2) have t.max-fun-diff (F g) (F h) = f (s.max-fun-diff g h)
  unfolding t.max-fun-diff-def compat-def
  by (intro t.maxim-equality) (auto simp: t.isMaxim-def F-def dest: injfD)
  with gh invff max-fun-diff-in
  show let m = t.max-fun-diff (F g) (F h) in (F g m, F h m)  $\in$  r
  unfolding F-def Let-def by (auto simp: dest: injfD)
qed
moreover
from FLR have ofilter ?R (F ' Field ?L)
  unfolding rexp.ofilter-def under-def rs.Field-oxp rt.Field-oxp unfolding
  rt.oxp-def
  proof (safe elim!: imageI)
    fix g h assume gh: g  $\in$  FinFunc r s h  $\in$  FinFunc r t F g  $\in$  FinFunc r t
    let m = t.max-fun-diff h (F g) in (h m, F g m)  $\in$  r
    thus h  $\in$  F ' FinFunc r s
    proof (cases h = F g)
      case False
      hence max-Field: t.max-fun-diff h (F g)  $\in$  {a  $\in$  Field t. h a  $\neq$  F g a}
      by (rule rt.max-fun-diff-in[OF - gh(2,3)])
      { assume *: t.max-fun-diff h (F g)  $\notin$  f ' Field s
        with max-Field have **: F g (t.max-fun-diff h (F g)) = r.zero unfolding
        F-def by auto
      }
    end
  end

```

with \*  $gh(4)$  have  $h (t.max\text{-}fun\text{-}diff\ h\ (F\ g)) = r.zero$  **unfolding** *Let-def*  
 by *auto*  
 with \*\* have *False* **using** *max-Field*  $gh(2,3)$  **unfolding** *FinFunc-def*  
*Func-def* by *auto*  
 }  
 hence *max-f-Field*:  $t.max\text{-}fun\text{-}diff\ h\ (F\ g) \in f\ 'Field\ s$  **by** *blast*  
 { **fix**  $z$  **assume**  $z: z \in Field\ t - f\ 'Field\ s$   
 have  $(t.max\text{-}fun\text{-}diff\ h\ (F\ g), z) \in t$   
**proof** (*rule ccontr*)  
 assume  $(t.max\text{-}fun\text{-}diff\ h\ (F\ g), z) \notin t$   
 hence  $(z, t.max\text{-}fun\text{-}diff\ h\ (F\ g)) \in t$  **using** *t.in-notinI*[*of t.max-fun-diff*  
*h (F g) z*]  
 z *max-Field* **by** *auto*  
 hence  $z \in f\ 'Field\ s$  **using**  $*(3)$  *max-f-Field* **unfolding** *t.ofilter-def*  
*under-def*  
 by *fastforce*  
 with  $z$  **show** *False* **by** *blast*  
**qed**  
 hence  $h\ z = r.zero$  **using** *rt.max-fun-diff-le-eq*[*OF - False gh(2,3), of z*]  
 z *max-f-Field* **unfolding** *F-def* **by** *auto*  
 } **note**  $** = this$   
 with  $*(3)$   $gh(2)$  have  $h = F\ (\lambda x. \text{if } x \in Field\ s \text{ then } h\ (f\ x) \text{ else undefined})$   
**using** *invff*  
**unfolding** *F-def fun-eq-iff FinFunc-def Func-def Let-def t.ofilter-def under-def*  
 by *auto*  
 moreover **from**  $gh(2)$   $*(1,3)$  have  $(\lambda x. \text{if } x \in Field\ s \text{ then } h\ (f\ x) \text{ else undefined}) \in FinFunc\ r\ s$   
**unfolding** *FinFunc-def Func-def fin-support-def support-def t.ofilter-def*  
*under-def*  
 by (*auto intro: inj-on-subset elim!: finite-imageD*[*OF finite-subset[rotated]*])  
 ultimately **show** *?thesis* **by** (*rule image-eqI*)  
**qed simp**  
**qed**  
 ultimately have *embed ?L ?R F* **using** *embed-iff-compat-inj-on-ofilter*[*of ?L ?R*  
*F*]  
 by (*auto intro: oexp-Well-order r s t*)  
 moreover  
**from** *FLR* have  $F\ 'Field\ ?L \subset Field\ ?R$   
**proof** (*intro psubsetI*)  
**from**  $*(4)$  **obtain**  $z$  **where**  $z: z \in Field\ t\ z \notin f\ 'Field\ s$  **by** *auto*  
**define**  $h$  **where** [*abs-def*]:  $h\ z' =$   
 (*if*  $z' \in Field\ t$  *then* *if*  $z' = z$  *then*  $x$  *else*  $r.zero$  *else* *undefined*) **for**  $z'$   
**from**  $z\ x(3)$  have  $rt.SUPP\ h = \{z\}$  **unfolding** *support-def h-def* **by** *simp*  
**with**  $x$  have  $h \in Field\ ?R$  **unfolding** *h-def rt.Field-oexp FinFunc-def Func-def*  
*fin-support-def*  
 by *auto*  
 moreover  
 { **fix**  $g$   
**from**  $z$  have  $F\ g\ z = r.zero\ h\ z = x$  **unfolding** *support-def h-def F-def* **by**

```

auto
  with  $x(\beta)$  have  $F g \neq h$  unfolding fun-eq-iff by fastforce
}
hence  $h \notin F \text{ ' } Field \text{ ?}L$  by blast
ultimately show  $F \text{ ' } Field \text{ ?}L \neq Field \text{ ?}R$  by blast
qed
ultimately have embedS  $?L \text{ ?}R F$  using embedS-iff[OF rs.oexp-Well-order, of
 $?R F$ ] by auto
thus ?thesis unfolding ordLess-def using  $r s t$  by (auto intro: oexp-Well-order)
qed

lemma oexp-monoL:
  assumes  $r \leq_o s$ 
  shows  $r \hat{\circ} t \leq_o s \hat{\circ} t$ 
proof -
  interpret rt: wo-rel2  $r t$  by unfold-locales (rule r, rule t)
  interpret st: wo-rel2  $s t$  by unfold-locales (rule s, rule t)
  interpret r: wo-rel  $r$  by unfold-locales (rule r)
  interpret s: wo-rel  $s$  by unfold-locales (rule s)
  interpret t: wo-rel  $t$  by unfold-locales (rule t)
  show ?thesis
  proof (cases  $t = \{\}$ )
    case True thus ?thesis using  $r s$  unfolding ordLeq-def2 underS-def by auto
  next
    case False thus ?thesis
  proof (cases  $r = \{\}$ )
    case True thus ?thesis using  $t \langle t \neq \{\} \rangle$  st.oexp-Well-order ozero-ordLeq[unfolded
ozero-def]
    by auto
  next
    case False
  from assms obtain f where  $f$ : embed  $r s f$  unfolding ordLeq-def by blast
  hence  $f\text{-underS}$ :  $\forall a \in Field\ r. f\ a \in Field\ s \wedge f \text{ ' } underS\ r\ a \subseteq underS\ s\ (f\ a)$ 
  using embed-in-Field embed-underS2 rt.rWELL by fastforce
  from  $f \langle t \neq \{\} \rangle$  False have *:  $Field\ r \neq \{\}$   $Field\ s \neq \{\}$   $Field\ t \neq \{\}$ 
  unfolding Field-def embed-def under-def bij-betw-def by auto
  with  $f$  obtain  $x$  where  $s.zero = f\ x$   $x \in Field\ r$  unfolding embed-def
bij-betw-def
  using  $s.zero\text{-under}$  subsetD[OF under-Field[of  $r$ ]]
  by (metis (no-types, lifting)  $f\text{-inv-into-}f\text{-underS}$  inv-into-into  $r.zero\text{-in-Field}$ )
  with  $f$  have  $fz$ :  $f\ r.zero = s.zero$  and inj: inj-on  $f$  ( $Field\ r$ ) and compat:
compat  $r s f$ 
  unfolding embed-iff-compat-inj-on-ofilter[OF  $r s$ ] compat-def
  by (fastforce intro: s.leq-zero-imp) +
  let  $?f = \lambda g\ x. \text{ if } x \in Field\ t \text{ then } f\ (g\ x) \text{ else undefined}$ 
  { fix  $g$  assume  $g$ :  $g \in Field\ (r \hat{\circ} t)$ 
  with  $fz\ f\text{-underS}$  have  $Field\text{-fg}$ :  $?f\ g \in Field\ (s \hat{\circ} t)$ 
  unfolding st.Field-oexp rt.Field-oexp FinFunc-def Func-def fin-support-def
support-def

```

```

    by (auto elim!: finite-subset[rotated])
  moreover
  have ?f ' underS (r  $\hat{\circ}$  t) g  $\subseteq$  underS (s  $\hat{\circ}$  t) (?f g)
  proof safe
    fix h
    assume h-underS: h  $\in$  underS (r  $\hat{\circ}$  t) g
    hence h  $\in$  Field (r  $\hat{\circ}$  t) unfolding underS-def Field-def by auto
    with fz f-underS have Field-fh: ?f h  $\in$  Field (s  $\hat{\circ}$  t)
    unfolding st.Field-oezp rt.Field-oezp FinFunc-def Func-def fin-support-def
support-def
    by (auto elim!: finite-subset[rotated])
    from h-underS have h  $\neq$  g and hg: (h, g)  $\in$  rt.oezp unfolding underS-def
by auto
    with f inj have neg: ?f h  $\neq$  ?f g
    unfolding fun-eq-iff inj-on-def rt.oezp-def map-option-case FinFunc-def
Func-def Let-def
    by simp metis
    with hg have t.max-fun-diff (?f h) (?f g) = t.max-fun-diff h g unfolding
rt.oezp-def
    using rt.max-fun-diff[OF <h  $\neq$  g>] rt.max-fun-diff-in[OF <h  $\neq$  g>]
    by (subst t.max-fun-diff-def, intro t.maxim-equality)
    (auto simp: t.isMaxim-def intro: inj-onD[OF inj] intro!: rt.max-fun-diff-max)
    with Field-fg Field-fh hg fz f-underS compat neg have (?f h, ?f g)  $\in$  st.oezp
    using rt.max-fun-diff[OF <h  $\neq$  g>] rt.max-fun-diff-in[OF <h  $\neq$  g>]
unfolding st.Field-oezp
    unfolding rt.oezp-def st.oezp-def Let-def compat-def by auto
    with neg show ?f h  $\in$  underS (s  $\hat{\circ}$  t) (?f g) unfolding underS-def by
auto
    qed
    ultimately have ?f g  $\in$  Field (s  $\hat{\circ}$  t)  $\wedge$  ?f ' underS (r  $\hat{\circ}$  t) g  $\subseteq$  underS
(s  $\hat{\circ}$  t) (?f g)
    by blast
  }
  thus ?thesis unfolding ordLeq-def2 by (fastforce intro: oezp-Well-order r s
t)
  qed
  qed
  qed
lemma ordLeq-oezp2:
  assumes oone < o r
  shows s  $\leq$  o r  $\hat{\circ}$  s
  proof -
    interpret rs: wo-rel2 r s by unfold-locales (rule r, rule s)
    interpret r: wo-rel r by unfold-locales (rule r)
    interpret s: wo-rel s by unfold-locales (rule s)
    from assms well-order-on-domain[OF r] obtain x where
      x: x  $\in$  Field r r.zero  $\in$  Field r x  $\neq$  r.zero
    unfolding ordLess-def oone-def embedS-def[abs-def] bij-betw-def embed-def un-

```



```

der-def
  by (auto simp: image-def)
  (metis (lifting) equals0D mem-Collect-eq r.zero-in-Field singletonI)
  let ?f =  $\lambda a b.$  if  $b \in \text{Field } s$  then if  $b = a$  then  $x$  else  $r.\text{zero}$  else undefined
  from  $x(3)$  have SUPP:  $\bigwedge y. y \in \text{Field } s \implies rs.\text{SUPP } (?f y) = \{y\}$  unfolding
support-def by auto
  { fix y assume y:  $y \in \text{Field } s$ 
    with  $x(1,2)$  SUPP have  $?f y \in \text{Field } (r \hat{\circ} s)$  unfolding rs.Field-oezp
    by (auto simp: FinFunc-def Func-def fin-support-def)
    moreover
    have  $?f ' \text{underS } s y \subseteq \text{underS } (r \hat{\circ} s) (?f y)$ 
    proof safe
      fix z
      assume  $z \in \text{underS } s y$ 
      hence  $z: z \neq y \ (z, y) \in s \ z \in \text{Field } s$  unfolding underS-def Field-def by
auto
      from  $x(3)$  y  $z(1,3)$  have  $?f z \neq ?f y$  unfolding fun-eq-iff by auto
      moreover
      { from  $x(1,2)$  have  $?f z \in \text{FinFunc } r s$   $?f y \in \text{FinFunc } r s$ 
        unfolding FinFunc-def Func-def fin-support-def by (auto simp: SUPP[OF
 $z(3)$ ] SUPP[OF y])
        moreover
        from  $x(3)$  y  $z(1,2)$  refl-onD[OF s.REFL] have  $s.\text{max-fun-diff } (?f z) (?f y)$ 
      = y
        unfolding rs.max-fun-diff-alt SUPP[OF  $z(3)$ ] SUPP[OF y]
        by (intro s.maxim-equality) (auto simp: s.isMaxim-def)
        ultimately have  $(?f z, ?f y) \in rs.\text{oezp}$  using y  $x(1)$ 
        unfolding rs.oezp-def Let-def by auto
      }
      ultimately show  $?f z \in \text{underS } (r \hat{\circ} s) (?f y)$  unfolding underS-def by
blast
    qed
    ultimately have  $?f y \in \text{Field } (r \hat{\circ} s) \wedge ?f ' \text{underS } s y \subseteq \text{underS } (r \hat{\circ} s) (?f y)$ 
  y) by blast
  }
  thus ?thesis unfolding ordLeq-def2 by (fast intro: oezp-Well-order r s)
qed

lemma FinFunc-osum:
   $fg \in \text{FinFunc } r (s + o t) = (fg \circ \text{Inl} \in \text{FinFunc } r s \wedge fg \circ \text{Inr} \in \text{FinFunc } r t)$ 
  (is ?L = (?R1  $\wedge$  ?R2))
proof safe
  assume ?L
  from  $\langle ?L \rangle$  show ?R1 unfolding FinFunc-def Field-osum Func-def Int-iff fin-support-Field-osum
o-def
  by (auto split: sum.splits)
  from  $\langle ?L \rangle$  show ?R2 unfolding FinFunc-def Field-osum Func-def Int-iff fin-support-Field-osum
o-def
  by (auto split: sum.splits)

```

**next**  
**assume** ?R1 ?R2  
**thus** ?L **unfolding** *FinFunc-def Field-osum Func-def*  
**by** (*auto simp: fin-support-Field-osum o-def image-iff split: sum.splits*) (*metis sumE*)  
**qed**

**lemma** *max-fun-diff-eq-Inl*:  
**assumes** *wo-rel.max-fun-diff* ( $s + o\ t$ ) (*case-sum*  $f1\ g1$ ) (*case-sum*  $f2\ g2$ ) = *Inl x*  
 $case-sum\ f1\ g1 \neq case-sum\ f2\ g2$   
 $case-sum\ f1\ g1 \in FinFunc\ r\ (s + o\ t)$   $case-sum\ f2\ g2 \in FinFunc\ r\ (s + o\ t)$   
**shows** *wo-rel.max-fun-diff*  $s\ f1\ f2 = x$  (**is** ?P)  $g1 = g2$  (**is** ?Q)  
**proof** –  
**interpret** *st*: *wo-rel*  $s + o\ t$  **by** *unfold-locales* (*rule osum-Well-order*[*OF s t*])  
**interpret** *s*: *wo-rel*  $s$  **by** *unfold-locales* (*rule s*)  
**interpret** *rst*: *wo-rel2*  $r\ s + o\ t$  **by** *unfold-locales* (*rule r*, *rule osum-Well-order*[*OF s t*])  
**from** *assms*(1) **have** \*: *st.isMaxim*  $\{a \in Field\ (s + o\ t). case-sum\ f1\ g1\ a \neq case-sum\ f2\ g2\ a\}$  (*Inl x*)  
**using** *rst.isMaxim-max-fun-diff*[*OF assms*(2–4)] **by** *simp*  
**hence** *s.isMaxim*  $\{a \in Field\ s. f1\ a \neq f2\ a\}\ x$   
**unfolding** *st.isMaxim-def s.isMaxim-def Field-osum* **by** (*auto simp: osum-def*)  
**thus** ?P **unfolding** *s.max-fun-diff-def* **by** (*rule s.maxim-equality*)  
**from** *assms*(3,4) **have** \*\*:  $g1 \in FinFunc\ r\ t\ g2 \in FinFunc\ r\ t$  **unfolding** *FinFunc-osum*  
**by** (*auto simp: o-def*)  
**show** ?Q  
**proof**  
**fix**  $x$   
**from** \* \*\* **show**  $g1\ x = g2\ x$  **unfolding** *st.isMaxim-def Field-osum FinFunc-def Func-def fun-eq-iff*  
**unfolding** *osum-def* **by** (*case-tac*  $x \in Field\ t$ ) *auto*  
**qed**  
**qed**

**lemma** *max-fun-diff-eq-Inr*:  
**assumes** *wo-rel.max-fun-diff* ( $s + o\ t$ ) (*case-sum*  $f1\ g1$ ) (*case-sum*  $f2\ g2$ ) = *Inr x*  
 $case-sum\ f1\ g1 \neq case-sum\ f2\ g2$   
 $case-sum\ f1\ g1 \in FinFunc\ r\ (s + o\ t)$   $case-sum\ f2\ g2 \in FinFunc\ r\ (s + o\ t)$   
**shows** *wo-rel.max-fun-diff*  $t\ g1\ g2 = x$  (**is** ?P)  $g1 \neq g2$  (**is** ?Q)  
**proof** –  
**interpret** *st*: *wo-rel*  $s + o\ t$  **by** *unfold-locales* (*rule osum-Well-order*[*OF s t*])  
**interpret** *t*: *wo-rel*  $t$  **by** *unfold-locales* (*rule t*)  
**interpret** *rst*: *wo-rel2*  $r\ s + o\ t$  **by** *unfold-locales* (*rule r*, *rule osum-Well-order*[*OF s t*])  
**from** *assms*(1) **have** \*: *st.isMaxim*  $\{a \in Field\ (s + o\ t). case-sum\ f1\ g1\ a \neq case-sum\ f2\ g2\ a\}$  (*Inr x*)  
**using** *rst.isMaxim-max-fun-diff*[*OF assms*(2–4)] **by** *simp*

hence  $t.isMaxim \{a \in Field\ t.\ g1\ a \neq g2\ a\} \ x$   
 unfolding  $st.isMaxim-def\ t.isMaxim-def\ Field-osum$  by (auto simp: osum-def)  
 thus  $?P\ ?Q$  unfolding  $t.max-fun-diff-def\ fun-eq-iff$   
 by (auto intro: t.maxim-equality simp: t.isMaxim-def)  
 qed

**lemma**  $oexp-osum: r \hat{o} (s + o\ t) = o\ (r \hat{o} s) * o\ (r \hat{o} t)$  (is  $?R = o\ ?L$ )  
**proof** (rule ordIso-symmetric)  
 interpret  $rst: wo-rel2\ r\ s + o\ t$  by unfold-locales (rule r, rule osum-Well-order[OF s t])  
 interpret  $rs: wo-rel2\ r\ s$  by unfold-locales (rule r, rule s)  
 interpret  $rt: wo-rel2\ r\ t$  by unfold-locales (rule r, rule t)  
 let  $?f = \lambda(f, g). case-sum\ f\ g$   
 have  $bij-betw\ ?f\ (Field\ ?L)\ (Field\ ?R)$   
 unfolding  $bij-betw-def\ rst.Field-oexp\ rs.Field-oexp\ rt.Field-oexp\ Field-oprod$   
**proof** (intro conjI)  
 show  $inj-on\ ?f\ (FinFunc\ r\ s \times FinFunc\ r\ t)$  unfolding  $inj-on-def$   
 by (auto simp: fun-eq-iff split: sum.splits)  
 show  $?f\ ' (FinFunc\ r\ s \times FinFunc\ r\ t) = FinFunc\ r\ (s + o\ t)$   
**proof** safe  
 fix  $fg$  assume  $fg \in FinFunc\ r\ (s + o\ t)$   
 thus  $fg \in ?f\ ' (FinFunc\ r\ s \times FinFunc\ r\ t)$   
 by (intro image-eqI[of - - (fg o Inl, fg o Inr)])  
 (auto simp: FinFunc-osum fun-eq-iff split: sum.splits)  
 qed (auto simp: FinFunc-osum o-def)  
 qed  
 moreover have  $compat\ ?L\ ?R\ ?f$   
 unfolding  $compat-def\ rst.Field-oexp\ rs.Field-oexp\ rt.Field-oexp\ oprod-def$   
 unfolding  $rst.oexp-def\ Let-def\ rs.oexp-def\ rt.oexp-def$   
 by (fastforce simp: Field-osum FinFunc-osum o-def split: sum.splits  
 dest: max-fun-diff-eq-Inl max-fun-diff-eq-Inr)  
 ultimately have  $iso\ ?L\ ?R\ ?f$  using  $r\ s\ t$   
 by (subst iso-iff3) (auto intro: oexp-Well-order oprod-Well-order osum-Well-order)  
 thus  $?L = o\ ?R$  using  $r\ s\ t$  unfolding  $ordIso-def$   
 by (auto intro: oexp-Well-order oprod-Well-order osum-Well-order)  
 qed

**definition**  $rev-curr\ f\ b = (if\ b \in Field\ t\ then\ \lambda a. f\ (a, b)\ else\ undefined)$

**lemma**  $rev-curr-FinFunc$ :  
 assumes  $Field: Field\ r \neq \{\}$   
 shows  $rev-curr\ ' (FinFunc\ r\ (s * o\ t)) = FinFunc\ (r \hat{o} s)\ t$   
**proof** safe  
 interpret  $rs: wo-rel2\ r\ s$  by unfold-locales (rule r, rule s)  
 interpret  $rst: wo-rel2\ r \hat{o} s\ t$  by unfold-locales (rule oexp-Well-order[OF r s], rule t)  
 fix  $g$  assume  $g: g \in FinFunc\ r\ (s * o\ t)$   
 hence  $finite\ (rst.SUPP\ (rev-curr\ g))\ \forall x \in Field\ t. finite\ (rs.SUPP\ (rev-curr\ g\ x))$

```

unfolding FinFunc-def Field-oprod rs.Field-oexp Func-def fin-support-def sup-
port-def
  rs.zero-oexp[OF Field] rev-curr-def by (auto simp: fun-eq-iff rs.const-def elim!:
finite-surj)
with g show rev-curr g  $\in$  FinFunc (r  $\hat{o}$  s) t
  unfolding FinFunc-def Field-oprod rs.Field-oexp Func-def
  by (auto simp: rev-curr-def fin-support-def)
next
  interpret rs: wo-rel2 r s by unfold-locales (rule r, rule s)
  interpret rst: wo-rel2 r  $\hat{o}$  s t by unfold-locales (rule oexp-Well-order[OF r s],
rule t)
  fix fg assume *: fg  $\in$  FinFunc (r  $\hat{o}$  s) t
  let ?g =  $\lambda(a, b). \text{if } (a, b) \in \text{Field } (s * o t) \text{ then } fg \ b \ a \ \text{else undefined}$ 
  show fg  $\in$  rev-curr ' FinFunc r (s  $* o$  t)
  proof (rule image-eqI[of - - ?g])
    show fg = rev-curr ?g
  proof
    fix x
    from * show fg x = rev-curr ?g x
    unfolding FinFunc-def rs.Field-oexp Func-def rev-curr-def Field-oprod by
auto
    qed
  next
  have **:  $(\bigcup g \in fg \text{ ' Field } t. rs.SUPP \ g) =$ 
 $(\bigcup g \in fg \text{ ' Field } t - \{rs.const\}. rs.SUPP \ g)$ 
    unfolding support-def by auto
    from * have ***:  $\forall g \in fg \text{ ' Field } t. \text{finite } (rs.SUPP \ g) \ \text{finite } (rst.SUPP \ fg)$ 
    unfolding rs.Field-oexp FinFunc-def Func-def fin-support-def Option.these-def
by force+
    hence finite (fg ' Field t -  $\{rs.const\}$ ) using *
    unfolding support-def rs.zero-oexp[OF Field] FinFunc-def Func-def
    by (elim finite-surj[of - - fg]) (fastforce simp: image-iff Option.these-def)
    with *** have finite  $((\bigcup g \in fg \text{ ' Field } t. rs.SUPP \ g) \times rst.SUPP \ fg)$ 
    by (subst **) (auto intro!: finite-cartesian-product)
    with * show ?g  $\in$  FinFunc r (s  $* o$  t)
    unfolding Field-oprod rs.Field-oexp FinFunc-def Func-def fin-support-def
Option.these-def
    support-def rs.zero-oexp[OF Field] by (auto elim!: finite-subset[rotated])
    qed
  qed

lemma rev-curr-app-FinFunc[elim!]:
 $\llbracket f \in \text{FinFunc } r \ (s * o \ t); z \in \text{Field } t \rrbracket \implies \text{rev-curr } f \ z \in \text{FinFunc } r \ s$ 
  unfolding rev-curr-def FinFunc-def Func-def Field-oprod fin-support-def sup-
port-def
  by (auto elim: finite-surj)

lemma max-fun-diff-oprod:
assumes Field: Field r  $\neq \{\}$  and f  $\neq g \ f \in \text{FinFunc } r \ (s * o \ t) \ g \in \text{FinFunc } r$ 

```

```

(s *o t)
defines m  $\equiv$  wo-rel.max-fun-diff t (rev-curr f) (rev-curr g)
shows wo-rel.max-fun-diff (s *o t) f g =
  (wo-rel.max-fun-diff s (rev-curr f m) (rev-curr g m), m)
proof -
  interpret st: wo-rel s *o t by unfold-locales (rule oprod-Well-order[OF s t])
  interpret s: wo-rel s by unfold-locales (rule s)
  interpret t: wo-rel t by unfold-locales (rule t)
  interpret r-st: wo-rel2 r s *o t by unfold-locales (rule r, rule oprod-Well-order[OF
s t])
  interpret rs: wo-rel2 r s by unfold-locales (rule r, rule s)
  interpret rst: wo-rel2 r  $\hat{o}$  s t by unfold-locales (rule oexp-Well-order[OF r s],
rule t)
  from fun-unequal-in-support[OF assms(2), of Field (s *o t) Field r Field r]
  assms(3,4)
  have diff1: rev-curr f  $\neq$  rev-curr g
    rev-curr f  $\in$  FinFunc (r  $\hat{o}$  s) t rev-curr g  $\in$  FinFunc (r  $\hat{o}$  s) t using
  rev-curr-FinFunc[OF Field]
  unfolding fun-eq-iff rev-curr-def[abs-def] FinFunc-def support-def Field-oprod
  by auto fast
  hence diff2: rev-curr f m  $\neq$  rev-curr g m rev-curr f m  $\in$  FinFunc r s rev-curr g
  m  $\in$  FinFunc r s
  using rst.max-fun-diff[OF diff1] assms(3,4) rst.max-fun-diff-in unfolding
  m-def by auto
  show ?thesis unfolding st.max-fun-diff-def
  proof (intro st.maxim-equality, unfold st.isMaxim-def Field-oprod, safe)
    show s.max-fun-diff (rev-curr f m) (rev-curr g m)  $\in$  Field s
    using rs.max-fun-diff-in[OF diff2] by auto
  next
    show m  $\in$  Field t using rst.max-fun-diff-in[OF diff1] unfolding m-def by
  auto
  next
    assume f (s.max-fun-diff (rev-curr f m) (rev-curr g m), m) =
      g (s.max-fun-diff (rev-curr f m) (rev-curr g m), m)
    (is f (?x, m) = g (?x, m))
    hence rev-curr f m ?x = rev-curr g m ?x unfolding rev-curr-def by auto
    with rs.max-fun-diff-in[OF diff2] show False by auto
  next
    fix x y assume f (x, y)  $\neq$  g (x, y) x  $\in$  Field s y  $\in$  Field t
    thus ((x, y), (s.max-fun-diff (rev-curr f m) (rev-curr g m), m))  $\in$  s *o t
    using rst.max-fun-diff-in[OF diff1] rs.max-fun-diff-in[OF diff2] diff1 diff2
    rst.max-fun-diff-max[OF diff1, of y] rs.max-fun-diff-le-eq[OF - diff2, of x]
    unfolding oprod-def m-def rev-curr-def fun-eq-iff by (auto intro: s.in-notinI)
  qed
qed

lemma oexp-oexp: (r  $\hat{o}$  s)  $\hat{o}$  t =o r  $\hat{o}$  (s *o t) (is ?R =o ?L)
proof (cases r = {})
  case True

```

```

interpret rs: wo-rel2 r s by unfold-locales (rule r, rule s)
interpret rst: wo-rel2 r  $\hat{o}$  s t by unfold-locales (rule oexp-Well-order[OF r s],
rule t)
show ?thesis
proof (cases s = {}  $\vee$  t = {})
case True with  $\langle r = \{\} \rangle$  show ?thesis
by (auto simp: oexp-empty[OF oexp-Well-order[OF Well-order-empty s]]
intro!: ordIso-transitive[OF ordIso-symmetric[OF oone-ordIso] oone-ordIso]
ordIso-transitive[OF oone-ordIso-oexp[OF ordIso-symmetric[OF oone-ordIso]
t] oone-ordIso])
next
case False
hence s * o t  $\neq$  {} unfolding oprod-def Field-def by fastforce
with False show ?thesis
using  $\langle r = \{\} \rangle$  ozero-ordIso
by (auto simp add: s t oprod-Well-order ozero-def)
qed
next
case False
hence Field: Field r  $\neq$  {} by (metis Field-def Range-empty-iff Un-empty)
show ?thesis
proof (rule ordIso-symmetric)
interpret r-st: wo-rel2 r s * o t by unfold-locales (rule r, rule oprod-Well-order[OF
s t])
interpret rs: wo-rel2 r s by unfold-locales (rule r, rule s)
interpret rst: wo-rel2 r  $\hat{o}$  s t by unfold-locales (rule oexp-Well-order[OF r s],
rule t)
have bij: bij-betw rev-curr (Field ?L) (Field ?R)
unfolding bij-betw-def r-st.Field-oexp rst.Field-oexp Field-oprod proof (intro
conjI)
show inj-on rev-curr (FinFunc r (s * o t))
unfolding inj-on-def FinFunc-def Func-def Field-oprod rs.Field-oexp rev-curr-def[abs-def]
by (auto simp: fun-eq-iff) metis
show rev-curr ‘ (FinFunc r (s * o t)) = FinFunc (r  $\hat{o}$  s) t by (rule
rev-curr-FinFunc[OF Field])
qed
moreover
have compat ?L ?R rev-curr
unfolding compat-def proof safe
fix fg1 fg2 assume fg: (fg1, fg2)  $\in$  r  $\hat{o}$  (s * o t)
show (rev-curr fg1, rev-curr fg2)  $\in$  r  $\hat{o}$  s  $\hat{o}$  t
proof (cases fg1 = fg2)
assume fg1  $\neq$  fg2
with fg show ?thesis
using rst.max-fun-diff-in[of rev-curr fg1 rev-curr fg2]
max-fun-diff-oprod[OF Field, of fg1 fg2] rev-curr-FinFunc[OF Field,
symmetric]
unfolding r-st.Field-oexp rs.Field-oexp rst.Field-oexp unfolding r-st.oexp-def
rst.oexp-def

```

```

      by (auto simp: rs.oexp-def Let-def) (auto simp: rev-curr-def[abs-def])
    next
      assume fg1 = fg2
      with fg bij show ?thesis unfolding r-st.Field-oexp rs.Field-oexp rst.Field-oexp
bij-betw-def
        by (auto simp: r-st.oexp-def rst.oexp-def)
      qed
    qed
  ultimately have iso ?L ?R rev-curr using r s t
    by (subst iso-iff3) (auto intro: oexp-Well-order oprod-Well-order)
  thus ?L =o ?R using r s t unfolding ordIso-def
    by (auto intro: oexp-Well-order oprod-Well-order)
  qed
qed

end

end

```

## 10 Cardinal-Order Relations

```

theory Cardinal-Order-Relation
  imports Wellorder-Constructions
begin

```

```

declare
  card-order-on-well-order-on[simp]
  card-of-card-order-on[simp]
  card-of-well-order-on[simp]
  Field-card-of[simp]
  card-of-Card-order[simp]
  card-of-Well-order[simp]
  card-of-least[simp]
  card-of-unique[simp]
  card-of-mono1[simp]
  card-of-mono2[simp]
  card-of-cong[simp]
  card-of-Field-ordIso[simp]
  card-of-underS[simp]
  ordLess-Field[simp]
  card-of-empty[simp]
  card-of-empty1[simp]
  card-of-image[simp]
  card-of-singl-ordLeq[simp]
  Card-order-singl-ordLeq[simp]
  card-of-Pow[simp]
  Card-order-Pow[simp]
  card-of-Plus1[simp]
  Card-order-Plus1[simp]

```

*card-of-Plus2*[simp]  
*Card-order-Plus2*[simp]  
*card-of-Plus-mono1*[simp]  
*card-of-Plus-mono2*[simp]  
*card-of-Plus-mono*[simp]  
*card-of-Plus-cong2*[simp]  
*card-of-Plus-cong*[simp]  
*card-of-Un-Plus-ordLeq*[simp]  
*card-of-Times1*[simp]  
*card-of-Times2*[simp]  
*card-of-Times3*[simp]  
*card-of-Times-mono1*[simp]  
*card-of-Times-mono2*[simp]  
*card-of-ordIso-finite*[simp]  
*card-of-Times-same-infinite*[simp]  
*card-of-Times-infinite-simps*[simp]  
*card-of-Plus-infinite1*[simp]  
*card-of-Plus-infinite2*[simp]  
*card-of-Plus-ordLess-infinite*[simp]  
*card-of-Plus-ordLess-infinite-Field*[simp]  
*infinite-cartesian-product*[simp]  
*cardSuc-Card-order*[simp]  
*cardSuc-greater*[simp]  
*cardSuc-ordLeq*[simp]  
*cardSuc-ordLeq-ordLess*[simp]  
*cardSuc-mono-ordLeq*[simp]  
*cardSuc-invar-ordIso*[simp]  
*card-of-cardSuc-finite*[simp]  
*cardSuc-finite*[simp]  
*card-of-Plus-ordLeq-infinite-Field*[simp]  
*curr-in*[intro, simp]

## 10.1 Cardinal of a set

**lemma** *card-of-inj-rel*: **assumes** *INJ*:  $\bigwedge x y y'. [(x, y) \in R; (x, y') \in R] \implies y = y'$   
**shows**  $|\{y. \exists x. (x, y) \in R\}| \leq_o |\{x. \exists y. (x, y) \in R\}|$

**proof** –

**let**  $?Y = \{y. \exists x. (x, y) \in R\}$  **let**  $?X = \{x. \exists y. (x, y) \in R\}$   
**let**  $?f = \lambda y. \text{SOME } x. (x, y) \in R$   
**have**  $?f \text{ ' } ?Y \leq ?X$  **by** (*auto dest: someI*)  
**moreover have** *inj-on*  $?f \text{ ' } ?Y$   
**by** (*metis (mono-tags, lifting) assms inj-onI mem-Collect-eq*)  
**ultimately show**  $|\{Y\}| \leq_o |\{X\}|$  **using** *card-of-ordLeq* **by** *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *card-of-unique2*:  $[\text{card-order-on } B \text{ } r; \text{bij-betw } f \text{ } A \text{ } B] \implies r =_o |A|$   
**using** *card-of-ordIso* *card-of-unique* *ordIso-equivalence* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *internalize-card-of-ordLess2*:



(  $|A| <_o |C|$  ) = (  $\exists B < C. |A| =_o |B| \wedge |B| <_o |C|$  )  
**using** *internalize-card-of-ordLess*[of  $A \mid C$ ] *Field-card-of*[of  $C$ ] **by** *auto*

**lemma** *Card-order-omax*:  
**assumes** *finite R* **and**  $R \neq \{\}$  **and**  $\forall r \in R. \text{Card-order } r$   
**shows** *Card-order (omax R)*  
**by** (*simp add: assms omax-in*)

**lemma** *Card-order-omax2*:  
**assumes** *finite I* **and**  $I \neq \{\}$   
**shows** *Card-order (omax  $\{|A \ i| \mid i. i \in I\}$ )*  
**proof** –  
**let**  $?R = \{|A \ i| \mid i. i \in I\}$   
**have** *finite ?R* **and**  $?R \neq \{\}$  **using** *assms* **by** *auto*  
**moreover** **have**  $\forall r \in ?R. \text{Card-order } r$   
**using** *card-of-Card-order* **by** *auto*  
**ultimately show** *?thesis* **by**(*rule Card-order-omax*)  
**qed**

## 10.2 Cardinals versus set operations on arbitrary sets

**lemma** *card-of-set-type*[*simp*]:  $|UNIV::'a \text{ set}| <_o |UNIV::'a \text{ set set}|$   
**using** *card-of-Pow*[of  $UNIV::'a \text{ set}$ ] **by** *simp*

**lemma** *card-of-Un1*[*simp*]:  $|A| \leq_o |A \cup B|$   
**by** *fastforce*

**lemma** *card-of-diff*[*simp*]:  $|A - B| \leq_o |A|$   
**by** *fastforce*

**lemma** *subset-ordLeq-strict*:  
**assumes**  $A \leq B$  **and**  $|A| <_o |B|$   
**shows**  $A < B$   
**using** *assms ordLess-irreflexive* **by** *blast*

**corollary** *subset-ordLeq-diff*:  
**assumes**  $A \leq B$  **and**  $|A| <_o |B|$   
**shows**  $B - A \neq \{\}$   
**using** *assms subset-ordLeq-strict* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *card-of-empty4*:  
 $|\{\}::'b \text{ set}| <_o |A::'a \text{ set}| = (A \neq \{\})$   
**by** (*metis card-of-empty card-of-ordLess2 image-is-empty not-ordLess-ordLeq*)

**lemma** *card-of-empty5*:  
 $|A| <_o |B| \implies B \neq \{\}$   
**using** *card-of-empty not-ordLess-ordLeq* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *Well-order-card-of-empty*:

$Well\text{-}order\ r \implies |\{\}\| \leq_o r$   
**by** *simp*

**lemma** *card-of-UNIV[simp]*:  
 $|A :: 'a\ set| \leq_o |UNIV :: 'a\ set|$   
**by** *simp*

**lemma** *card-of-UNIV2[simp]*:  
 $Card\text{-}order\ r \implies (r :: 'a\ rel) \leq_o |UNIV :: 'a\ set|$   
**using** *card-of-UNIV[of Field r]* *card-of-Field-ordIso*  
*ordIso-symmetric ordIso-ordLeq-trans* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *card-of-Pow-mono[simp]*:  
**assumes**  $|A| \leq_o |B|$   
**shows**  $|Pow\ A| \leq_o |Pow\ B|$   
**proof** –  
**obtain** *f* **where**  $inj\text{-}on\ f\ A \wedge f\ 'A \leq B$   
**using** *assms card-of-ordLeq[of A B]* **by** *auto*  
**hence**  $inj\text{-}on\ (image\ f)\ (Pow\ A) \wedge (image\ f)\ 'A \leq (Pow\ B)$   
**by** (*auto simp: inj-on-image-Pow image-Pow-mono*)  
**thus** *?thesis* **using** *card-of-ordLeq[of Pow A]* **by** *metis*  
**qed**

**lemma** *ordIso-Pow-mono[simp]*:  
**assumes**  $r \leq_o r'$   
**shows**  $|Pow(Field\ r)| \leq_o |Pow(Field\ r')|$   
**using** *assms card-of-mono2 card-of-Pow-mono* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *card-of-Pow-cong[simp]*:  
**assumes**  $|A| =_o |B|$   
**shows**  $|Pow\ A| =_o |Pow\ B|$   
**by** (*meson assms card-of-Pow-mono ordIso-iff-ordLeq*)

**lemma** *ordIso-Pow-cong[simp]*:  
**assumes**  $r =_o r'$   
**shows**  $|Pow(Field\ r)| =_o |Pow(Field\ r')|$   
**using** *assms card-of-cong card-of-Pow-cong* **by** *blast*

**corollary** *Card-order-Plus-empty1*:  
 $Card\text{-}order\ r \implies r =_o |(\text{Field}\ r) <+> \{\}|$   
**using** *card-of-Plus-empty1 card-of-Field-ordIso ordIso-equivalence* **by** *blast*

**corollary** *Card-order-Plus-empty2*:  
 $Card\text{-}order\ r \implies r =_o |\{\}| <+> (\text{Field}\ r)|$   
**using** *card-of-Plus-empty2 card-of-Field-ordIso ordIso-equivalence* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *card-of-Un2[simp]*:  
**shows**  $|A| \leq_o |B \cup A|$   
**by** *fastforce*

```

lemma Un-Plus-bij-betw:
  assumes  $A \text{ Int } B = \{\}$ 
  shows  $\exists f. \text{bij-betw } f \ (A \cup B) \ (A <+> B)$ 
proof –
  have  $\text{bij-betw } (\lambda c. \text{if } c \in A \text{ then } \text{Inl } c \text{ else } \text{Inr } c) \ (A \cup B) \ (A <+> B)$ 
    using assms unfolding bij-betw-def inj-on-def by auto
  thus ?thesis by blast
qed

lemma card-of-Un-Plus-ordIso:
  assumes  $A \text{ Int } B = \{\}$ 
  shows  $|A \cup B| =_o |A <+> B|$ 
  by (meson Un-Plus-bij-betw assms card-of-ordIso)

lemma card-of-Un-Plus-ordIso1:
   $|A \cup B| =_o |A <+> (B - A)|$ 
  using card-of-Un-Plus-ordIso [of A B - A] by auto

lemma card-of-Un-Plus-ordIso2:
   $|A \cup B| =_o |(A - B) <+> B|$ 
  using card-of-Un-Plus-ordIso [of A - B B] by auto

lemma card-of-Times-singl1:  $|A| =_o |A \times \{b\}|$ 
proof –
  have  $\text{bij-betw } \text{fst} \ (A \times \{b\}) \ A$  unfolding bij-betw-def inj-on-def by force
  thus ?thesis using card-of-ordIso ordIso-symmetric by blast
qed

corollary Card-order-Times-singl1:
   $\text{Card-order } r \implies r =_o |(Field\ r) \times \{b\}|$ 
  using card-of-Times-singl1 [of - b] card-of-Field-ordIso ordIso-equivalence by blast

lemma card-of-Times-singl2:  $|A| =_o |\{b\} \times A|$ 
proof –
  have  $\text{bij-betw } \text{snd} \ (\{b\} \times A) \ A$ 
    unfolding bij-betw-def inj-on-def by force
  thus ?thesis using card-of-ordIso ordIso-symmetric by blast
qed

corollary Card-order-Times-singl2:
   $\text{Card-order } r \implies r =_o |\{a\} \times (Field\ r)|$ 
  using card-of-Times-singl2 [of - a] card-of-Field-ordIso ordIso-equivalence by blast

lemma card-of-Times-assoc:  $|(A \times B) \times C| =_o |A \times B \times C|$ 
proof –
  let ?f =  $\lambda((a,b),c). (a,(b,c))$ 
  have  $A \times B \times C \subseteq ?f' \ ((A \times B) \times C)$ 
  proof

```

```

fix  $x$  assume  $x \in A \times B \times C$ 
then obtain  $a\ b\ c$  where  $*$ :  $a \in A\ b \in B\ c \in C\ x = (a, b, c)$  by blast
let  $?x = ((a, b), c)$ 
from  $*$  have  $?x \in (A \times B) \times C\ x = ?f\ ?x$  by auto
thus  $x \in ?f\ '((A \times B) \times C)$  by blast
qed
hence bij-betw  $?f\ ((A \times B) \times C)\ (A \times B \times C)$ 
unfolding bij-betw-def inj-on-def by auto
thus ?thesis using card-of-ordIso by blast
qed

```

```

lemma card-of-Times-cong1[simp]:
  assumes  $|A| =_o |B|$ 
  shows  $|A \times C| =_o |B \times C|$ 
  using assms by (simp add: ordIso-iff-ordLeq)

```

```

lemma card-of-Times-cong2[simp]:
  assumes  $|A| =_o |B|$ 
  shows  $|C \times A| =_o |C \times B|$ 
  using assms by (simp add: ordIso-iff-ordLeq)

```

```

lemma card-of-Times-mono[simp]:
  assumes  $|A| \leq_o |B|$  and  $|C| \leq_o |D|$ 
  shows  $|A \times C| \leq_o |B \times D|$ 
  using assms card-of-Times-mono1[of A B C] card-of-Times-mono2[of C D B]
  ordLeq-transitive[of |A × C|] by blast

```

```

corollary ordLeq-Times-mono:
  assumes  $r \leq_o r'$  and  $p \leq_o p'$ 
  shows  $|(Field\ r) \times (Field\ p)| \leq_o |(Field\ r') \times (Field\ p')|$ 
  using assms card-of-mono2[of r r'] card-of-mono2[of p p'] card-of-Times-mono
by blast

```

```

corollary ordIso-Times-cong1[simp]:
  assumes  $r =_o r'$ 
  shows  $|(Field\ r) \times C| =_o |(Field\ r') \times C|$ 
  using assms card-of-cong card-of-Times-cong1 by blast

```

```

corollary ordIso-Times-cong2:
  assumes  $r =_o r'$ 
  shows  $|A \times (Field\ r)| =_o |A \times (Field\ r')|$ 
  using assms card-of-cong card-of-Times-cong2 by blast

```

```

lemma card-of-Times-cong[simp]:
  assumes  $|A| =_o |B|$  and  $|C| =_o |D|$ 
  shows  $|A \times C| =_o |B \times D|$ 
  using assms
  by (auto simp: ordIso-iff-ordLeq)

```

**corollary** *ordIso-Times-cong*:

assumes  $r =_o r'$  and  $p =_o p'$   
 shows  $|(Field\ r) \times (Field\ p)| =_o |(Field\ r') \times (Field\ p')|$   
 using *assms card-of-cong[of r r'] card-of-cong[of p p'] card-of-Times-cong* by *blast*

**lemma** *card-of-Sigma-mono2*:

assumes *inj-on*  $f$  ( $I :: 'i\ set$ ) and  $f \text{ ' } I \leq (J :: 'j\ set)$   
 shows  $|SIGMA\ i : I. (A :: 'j \Rightarrow 'a\ set)\ (f\ i)| \leq_o |SIGMA\ j : J. A\ j|$   
**proof**–  
 let  $?LEFT = SIGMA\ i : I. A\ (f\ i)$   
 let  $?RIGHT = SIGMA\ j : J. A\ j$   
 obtain  $u$  where  $u\text{-def}$ :  $u = (\lambda(i :: 'i, a :: 'a). (f\ i, a))$  by *blast*  
 have *inj-on*  $u\ ?LEFT \wedge u \text{ ' } ?LEFT \leq ?RIGHT$   
 using *assms unfolding u-def inj-on-def* by *auto*  
 thus *?thesis* using *card-of-ordLeq* by *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *card-of-Sigma-mono*:

assumes *INJ*: *inj-on*  $f\ I$  and *IM*:  $f \text{ ' } I \leq J$  and  
 $LEQ$ :  $\forall j \in J. |A\ j| \leq_o |B\ j|$   
 shows  $|SIGMA\ i : I. A\ (f\ i)| \leq_o |SIGMA\ j : J. B\ j|$   
**proof**–  
 have  $\forall i \in I. |A(f\ i)| \leq_o |B(f\ i)|$   
 using *IM LEQ* by *blast*  
 hence  $|SIGMA\ i : I. A\ (f\ i)| \leq_o |SIGMA\ i : I. B\ (f\ i)|$   
 using *card-of-Sigma-mono1[of I]* by *metis*  
 moreover have  $|SIGMA\ i : I. B\ (f\ i)| \leq_o |SIGMA\ j : J. B\ j|$   
 using *INJ IM card-of-Sigma-mono2* by *blast*  
 ultimately show *?thesis* using *ordLeq-transitive* by *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *ordLeq-Sigma-mono1*:

assumes  $\forall i \in I. p\ i \leq_o r\ i$   
 shows  $|SIGMA\ i : I. Field(p\ i)| \leq_o |SIGMA\ i : I. Field(r\ i)|$   
 using *assms* by (*auto simp: card-of-Sigma-mono1*)

**lemma** *ordLeq-Sigma-mono*:

assumes *inj-on*  $f\ I$  and  $f \text{ ' } I \leq J$  and  
 $\forall j \in J. p\ j \leq_o r\ j$   
 shows  $|SIGMA\ i : I. Field(p(f\ i))| \leq_o |SIGMA\ j : J. Field(r\ j)|$   
 using *assms card-of-mono2 card-of-Sigma-mono [of f I J \lambda i. Field(p\ i)]* by *metis*

**lemma** *ordIso-Sigma-cong1*:

assumes  $\forall i \in I. p\ i =_o r\ i$   
 shows  $|SIGMA\ i : I. Field(p\ i)| =_o |SIGMA\ i : I. Field(r\ i)|$   
 using *assms* by (*auto simp: card-of-Sigma-cong1*)

**lemma** *ordLeq-Sigma-cong*:

**assumes** *bij-betw*  $f$   $I$   $J$  **and**  
 $\forall j \in J. p\ j =_o r\ j$   
**shows**  $|\text{SIGMA } i : I. \text{Field}(p(f\ i))| =_o |\text{SIGMA } j : J. \text{Field}(r\ j)|$   
**using** *assms card-of-cong card-of-Sigma-cong*  
 $[\text{of } f\ I\ J\ \lambda j. \text{Field}(p\ j)\ \lambda j. \text{Field}(r\ j)]$  **by** *blast*

**lemma** *card-of-UNION-Sigma2*:  
**assumes**  $\bigwedge i\ j. \llbracket \{i, j\} \rrbracket \leq I; i \neq j \rrbracket \implies A\ i\ \text{Int}\ A\ j = \{\}$   
**shows**  $|\bigcup_{i \in I}. A\ i| =_o |\text{Sigma } I\ A|$   
**proof**–  
**let**  $?L = \bigcup_{i \in I}. A\ i$  **let**  $?R = \text{Sigma } I\ A$   
**have**  $|?L| \leq_o |?R|$  **using** *card-of-UNION-Sigma* .  
**moreover** **have**  $|?R| \leq_o |?L|$   
**proof**–  
**have** *inj-on snd*  $?R$   
**unfolding** *inj-on-def* **using** *assms* **by** *auto*  
**moreover** **have** *snd* ‘  $?R \leq ?L$  **by** *auto*  
**ultimately show** *?thesis* **using** *card-of-ordLeq* **by** *blast*  
**qed**  
**ultimately show** *?thesis* **by** (*simp add: ordIso-iff-ordLeq*)  
**qed**

**corollary** *Plus-into-Times*:  
**assumes**  $A2: a1 \neq a2 \wedge \{a1, a2\} \leq A$  **and**  $B2: b1 \neq b2 \wedge \{b1, b2\} \leq B$   
**shows**  $\exists f. \text{inj-on } f\ (A\ <+>\ B) \wedge f\ ‘\ (A\ <+>\ B) \leq A \times B$   
**using** *assms* **by** (*auto simp: card-of-Plus-Times card-of-ordLeq*)

**corollary** *Plus-into-Times-types*:  
**assumes**  $A2: (a1::'a) \neq a2$  **and**  $B2: (b1::'b) \neq b2$   
**shows**  $\exists (f::'a + 'b \Rightarrow 'a * 'b). \text{inj } f$   
**using** *assms Plus-into-Times*  $[\text{of } a1\ a2\ \text{UNIV } b1\ b2\ \text{UNIV}]$   
**by** *auto*

**corollary** *Times-same-infinite-bij-betw*:  
**assumes**  $\neg \text{finite } A$   
**shows**  $\exists f. \text{bij-betw } f\ (A \times A)\ A$   
**using** *assms* **by** (*auto simp: card-of-ordIso*)

**corollary** *Times-same-infinite-bij-betw-types*:  
**assumes**  $\text{INF}: \neg \text{finite}(\text{UNIV}::'a\ \text{set})$   
**shows**  $\exists (f::('a * 'a) \Rightarrow 'a). \text{bij } f$   
**using** *assms Times-same-infinite-bij-betw*  $[\text{of } \text{UNIV}::'a\ \text{set}]$   
**by** *auto*

**corollary** *Times-infinite-bij-betw*:  
**assumes**  $\text{INF}: \neg \text{finite } A$  **and**  $\text{NE}: B \neq \{\}$  **and**  $\text{INJ}: \text{inj-on } g\ B \wedge g\ ‘\ B \leq A$   
**shows**  $(\exists f. \text{bij-betw } f\ (A \times B)\ A) \wedge (\exists h. \text{bij-betw } h\ (B \times A)\ A)$   
**proof**–  
**have**  $|B| \leq_o |A|$  **using**  $\text{INJ}$  *card-of-ordLeq* **by** *blast*

**thus** *?thesis* **using** *INF NE*  
**by** (*auto simp: card-of-ordIso card-of-Times-infinite*)  
**qed**

**corollary** *Times-infinite-bij-betw-types*:

**assumes**  $\neg \text{finite}(UNIV::'a \text{ set})$  **and**  $\text{inj}(g::'b \Rightarrow 'a)$   
**shows**  $(\exists (f::('b * 'a) \Rightarrow 'a). \text{bij } f) \wedge (\exists (h::('a * 'b) \Rightarrow 'a). \text{bij } h))$   
**using** *assms Times-infinite-bij-betw[of UNIV::'a set UNIV::'b set g]*  
**by** *auto*

**lemma** *card-of-Times-ordLeq-infinite*:

$\llbracket \neg \text{finite } C; |A| \leq_o |C|; |B| \leq_o |C| \rrbracket \Longrightarrow |A \times B| \leq_o |C|$   
**by** (*simp add: card-of-Sigma-ordLeq-infinite*)

**corollary** *Plus-infinite-bij-betw*:

**assumes** *INF*:  $\neg \text{finite } A$  **and** *INJ*:  $\text{inj-on } g \ B \wedge g \text{ ' } B \leq A$   
**shows**  $(\exists f. \text{bij-betw } f \ (A <+> B) \ A) \wedge (\exists h. \text{bij-betw } h \ (B <+> A) \ A)$

**proof** –

**have**  $|B| \leq_o |A|$  **using** *INJ card-of-ordLeq* **by** *blast*  
**thus** *?thesis* **using** *INF*  
**by** (*auto simp: card-of-ordIso*)

**qed**

**corollary** *Plus-infinite-bij-betw-types*:

**assumes**  $\neg \text{finite}(UNIV::'a \text{ set})$  **and**  $\text{inj}(g::'b \Rightarrow 'a)$   
**shows**  $(\exists (f::('b + 'a) \Rightarrow 'a). \text{bij } f) \wedge (\exists (h::('a + 'b) \Rightarrow 'a). \text{bij } h))$   
**using** *assms Plus-infinite-bij-betw[of UNIV::'a set g UNIV::'b set]*  
**by** *auto*

**lemma** *card-of-Un-infinite*:

**assumes** *INF*:  $\neg \text{finite } A$  **and** *LEQ*:  $|B| \leq_o |A|$   
**shows**  $|A \cup B| =_o |A| \wedge |B \cup A| =_o |A|$   
**by** (*simp add: INF LEQ card-of-Un-ordLeq-infinite-Field ordIso-iff-ordLeq*)

**lemma** *card-of-Un-infinite-simps[simp]*:

$\llbracket \neg \text{finite } A; |B| \leq_o |A| \rrbracket \Longrightarrow |A \cup B| =_o |A|$   
 $\llbracket \neg \text{finite } A; |B| \leq_o |A| \rrbracket \Longrightarrow |B \cup A| =_o |A|$   
**using** *card-of-Un-infinite* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *card-of-Un-diff-infinite*:

**assumes** *INF*:  $\neg \text{finite } A$  **and** *LESS*:  $|B| <_o |A|$   
**shows**  $|A - B| =_o |A|$

**proof** –

**obtain** *C* **where** *C-def*:  $C = A - B$  **by** *blast*  
**have**  $|A \cup B| =_o |A|$   
**using** *assms ordLeq-iff-ordLess-or-ordIso card-of-Un-infinite* **by** *blast*  
**moreover** **have**  $C \cup B = A \cup B$  **unfolding** *C-def* **by** *auto*  
**ultimately** **have**  $1: |C \cup B| =_o |A|$  **by** *auto*

```

{assume *:  $|C| \leq_o |B|$ 
  moreover
  {assume **: finite B
    hence finite C
    using card-of-ordLeq-finite * by blast
    hence False using ** INF card-of-ordIso-finite 1 by blast
  }
  hence  $\neg$ finite B by auto
  ultimately have False
    using card-of-Un-infinite 1 ordIso-equivalence(1,3) LESS not-ordLess-ordIso
by metis
}
hence 2:  $|B| \leq_o |C|$  using card-of-Well-order ordLeq-total by blast
{assume *: finite C
  hence finite B using card-of-ordLeq-finite 2 by blast
  hence False using * INF card-of-ordIso-finite 1 by blast
}
hence  $\neg$ finite C by auto
hence  $|C| =_o |A|$ 
  using card-of-Un-infinite 1 2 ordIso-equivalence(1,3) by metis
thus ?thesis unfolding C-def .
qed

```

**corollary** *Card-order-Un-infinite*:

```

assumes INF:  $\neg$ finite (Field r) and CARD: Card-order r and
  LEQ:  $p \leq_o r$ 
shows  $|(\text{Field } r) \cup (\text{Field } p)| =_o r \wedge |(\text{Field } p) \cup (\text{Field } r)| =_o r$ 
proof-
  have  $| \text{Field } r \cup \text{Field } p | =_o | \text{Field } r | \wedge$ 
     $| \text{Field } p \cup \text{Field } r | =_o | \text{Field } r |$ 
  using assms by (auto simp: card-of-Un-infinite)
  thus ?thesis
    using assms card-of-Field-ordIso[of r]
      ordIso-transitive[of |Field r  $\cup$  Field p|]
      ordIso-transitive[of - |Field r|] by blast
qed

```

**corollary** *subset-ordLeq-diff-infinite*:

```

assumes INF:  $\neg$ finite B and SUB:  $A \leq B$  and LESS:  $|A| <_o |B|$ 
shows  $\neg$ finite ( $B - A$ )
using assms card-of-Un-diff-infinite card-of-ordIso-finite by blast

```

**lemma** *card-of-Times-ordLess-infinite[simp]*:

```

assumes INF:  $\neg$ finite C and
  LESS1:  $|A| <_o |C|$  and LESS2:  $|B| <_o |C|$ 
shows  $|A \times B| <_o |C|$ 
proof(cases  $A = \{\} \vee B = \{\}$ )
  assume Case1:  $A = \{\} \vee B = \{\}$ 
  hence  $A \times B = \{\}$  by blast

```



moreover have  $C \neq \{\}$  using  
 LESS1 card-of-empty5 by blast  
 ultimately show ?thesis by (auto simp: card-of-empty4)  
 next  
 assume Case2:  $\neg(A = \{\} \vee B = \{\})$   
 {assume \*:  $|C| \leq_o |A \times B|$   
 hence  $\neg \text{finite } (A \times B)$  using INF card-of-ordLeq-finite by blast  
 hence 1:  $\neg \text{finite } A \vee \neg \text{finite } B$  using finite-cartesian-product by blast  
 {assume Case21:  $|A| \leq_o |B|$   
 hence  $\neg \text{finite } B$  using 1 card-of-ordLeq-finite by blast  
 hence  $|A \times B| =_o |B|$  using Case2 Case21  
 by (auto simp: card-of-Times-infinite)  
 hence False using LESS2 not-ordLess-ordLeq \* ordLeq-ordIso-trans by blast  
 }  
 moreover  
 {assume Case22:  $|B| \leq_o |A|$   
 hence  $\neg \text{finite } A$  using 1 card-of-ordLeq-finite by blast  
 hence  $|A \times B| =_o |A|$  using Case2 Case22  
 by (auto simp: card-of-Times-infinite)  
 hence False using LESS1 not-ordLess-ordLeq \* ordLeq-ordIso-trans by blast  
 }  
 ultimately have False using ordLeq-total card-of-Well-order[of A]  
 card-of-Well-order[of B] by blast  
 }  
 thus ?thesis using ordLess-or-ordLeq[of  $|A \times B|$   $|C|$ ]  
 card-of-Well-order[of  $A \times B$ ] card-of-Well-order[of C] by auto  
 qed

lemma card-of-Times-ordLess-infinite-Field[simp]:  
 assumes INF:  $\neg \text{finite } (\text{Field } r)$  and  $r$ : Card-order  $r$  and  
 LESS1:  $|A| <_o r$  and LESS2:  $|B| <_o r$   
 shows  $|A \times B| <_o r$   
 proof—  
 let ?C = Field  $r$   
 have 1:  $r =_o |?C| \wedge |?C| =_o r$  using  $r$  card-of-Field-ordIso  
 ordIso-symmetric by blast  
 hence  $|A| <_o |?C|$   $|B| <_o |?C|$   
 using LESS1 LESS2 ordLess-ordIso-trans by blast+  
 hence  $|A \times B| <_o |?C|$  using INF  
 card-of-Times-ordLess-infinite by blast  
 thus ?thesis using 1 ordLess-ordIso-trans by blast  
 qed

lemma ordLeq-finite-Field:  
 assumes  $r \leq_o s$  and finite (Field  $s$ )  
 shows finite (Field  $r$ )  
 by (metis assms card-of-mono2 card-of-ordLeq-infinite)

lemma ordIso-finite-Field:

**assumes**  $r =_o s$   
**shows**  $\text{finite } (\text{Field } r) \longleftrightarrow \text{finite } (\text{Field } s)$   
**by**  $(\text{metis } \text{assms } \text{ordIso-iff-ordLeq } \text{ordLeq-finite-Field})$

### 10.3 Cardinals versus set operations involving infinite sets

**lemma**  $\text{finite-iff-cardOf-nat}$ :  
 $\text{finite } A = (|A| <_o |\text{UNIV}| :: \text{nat set})$   
**by**  $(\text{meson } \text{card-of-Well-order } \text{infinite-iff-card-of-nat } \text{not-ordLeq-iff-ordLess})$

**lemma**  $\text{finite-ordLess-infinite2[simp]}$ :  
**assumes**  $\text{finite } A$  **and**  $\neg \text{finite } B$   
**shows**  $|A| <_o |B|$   
**by**  $(\text{meson } \text{assms } \text{card-of-Well-order } \text{card-of-ordLeq-finite } \text{not-ordLeq-iff-ordLess})$

**lemma**  $\text{infinite-card-of-insert}$ :  
**assumes**  $\neg \text{finite } A$   
**shows**  $|\text{insert } a \ A| =_o |A|$   
**proof** –  
**have**  $iA: \text{insert } a \ A = A \cup \{a\}$  **by**  $\text{simp}$   
**show**  $?thesis$   
**using**  $\text{infinite-imp-bij-betw2[OF assms]}$  **unfolding**  $iA$   
**by**  $(\text{metis } \text{bij-betw-inv } \text{card-of-ordIso})$   
**qed**

**lemma**  $\text{card-of-Un-singl-ordLess-infinite1}$ :  
**assumes**  $\neg \text{finite } B$  **and**  $|A| <_o |B|$   
**shows**  $|\{a\} \ \text{Un } A| <_o |B|$   
**by**  $(\text{metis } \text{assms } \text{card-of-Un-ordLess-infinite } \text{finite.emptyI } \text{finite-insert } \text{finite-ordLess-infinite2})$

**lemma**  $\text{card-of-Un-singl-ordLess-infinite}$ :  
**assumes**  $\neg \text{finite } B$   
**shows**  $|A| <_o |B| \longleftrightarrow |\{a\} \ \text{Un } A| <_o |B|$   
**using**  $\text{assms } \text{card-of-Un-singl-ordLess-infinite1[of } B \ A]$   
**using**  $\text{card-of-Un2 } \text{ordLeq-ordLess-trans}$  **by**  $\text{blast}$

### 10.4 Cardinals versus lists

The next is an auxiliary operator, which shall be used for inductive proofs of facts concerning the cardinality of *List* :

**definition**  $nlists :: 'a \ \text{set} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a \ \text{list set}$   
**where**  $nlists \ A \ n \equiv \{l. \ \text{set } l \leq A \wedge \text{length } l = n\}$

**lemma**  $\text{lists-UNION-nlists}$ :  $\text{lists } A = (\bigcup n. \ nlists \ A \ n)$   
**unfolding**  $\text{lists-eq-set } nlists-def$  **by**  $\text{blast}$

**lemma**  $\text{card-of-lists}$ :  $|A| \leq_o |\text{lists } A|$   
**proof** –  
**let**  $?h = \lambda \ a. \ [a]$

have  $\text{inj-on } ?h \ A \wedge ?h \ ' \ A \leq \text{lists } A$   
 unfolding  $\text{inj-on-def lists-eq-set}$  by auto  
 thus  $?thesis$  by (metis card-of-ordLeq)  
 qed

lemma  $nlists-0$ :  $nlists \ A \ 0 = \{\}\}$   
 unfolding  $nlists-def$  by auto

lemma  $nlists\text{-not-empty}$ :  
 assumes  $A \neq \{\}$   
 shows  $nlists \ A \ n \neq \{\}$   
 proof (induction  $n$ )  
 case (Suc  $n$ )  
 then obtain  $a$  and  $l$  where  $a \in A \wedge l \in nlists \ A \ n$  using  $assms$  by auto  
 hence  $a \# l \in nlists \ A \ (Suc \ n)$  unfolding  $nlists-def$  by auto  
 then show  $?case$  by auto  
 qed (simp add:  $nlists-0$ )

lemma  $\text{card-of-nlists-Succ}$ :  $|nlists \ A \ (Suc \ n)| = o \ |A \times (nlists \ A \ n)|$   
 proof-  
 let  $?B = A \times (nlists \ A \ n)$  let  $?h = \lambda(a,l). a \# l$   
 have  $\text{inj-on } ?h \ ?B \wedge ?h \ ' \ ?B \leq nlists \ A \ (Suc \ n)$   
 unfolding  $\text{inj-on-def nlists-def}$  by auto  
 moreover have  $nlists \ A \ (Suc \ n) \leq ?h \ ' \ ?B$   
 proof clarify  
 fix  $l$  assume  $l \in nlists \ A \ (Suc \ n)$   
 hence  $1: \text{length } l = Suc \ n \wedge \text{set } l \leq A$  unfolding  $nlists-def$  by auto  
 then obtain  $a$  and  $l'$  where  $2: l = a \# l'$  by (auto simp: length-Suc-conv)  
 hence  $a \in A \wedge \text{set } l' \leq A \wedge \text{length } l' = n$  using  $1$  by auto  
 thus  $l \in ?h \ ' \ ?B$  using  $2$  unfolding  $nlists-def$  by auto  
 qed  
 ultimately have  $\text{bij-betw } ?h \ ?B \ (nlists \ A \ (Suc \ n))$   
 unfolding  $\text{bij-betw-def}$  by auto  
 thus  $?thesis$  using  $\text{card-of-ordIso ordIso-symmetric}$  by blast  
 qed

lemma  $\text{card-of-nlists-infinite}$ :  
 assumes  $\neg \text{finite } A$   
 shows  $|nlists \ A \ n| \leq o \ |A|$   
 proof (induction  $n$ )  
 case 0  
 have  $A \neq \{\}$  using  $assms$  by auto  
 then show  $?case$   
 by (simp add:  $nlists-0$ )  
 next  
 case (Suc  $n$ )  
 have  $|nlists \ A \ (Suc \ n)| = o \ |A \times (nlists \ A \ n)|$   
 using  $\text{card-of-nlists-Succ}$  by blast  
 moreover

**have**  $nlists\ A\ n \neq \{\}$  **using**  $assms\ nlists-not-empty[of\ A]$  **by**  $blast$   
**hence**  $|A \times (nlists\ A\ n)| =_o |A|$   
**using**  $Suc\ assms$  **by**  $auto$   
**ultimately show**  $?case$   
**using**  $ordIso-transitive\ ordIso-iff-ordLeq$  **by**  $blast$   
**qed**

**lemma**  $Card-order-lists$ :  $Card-order\ r \implies r \leq_o |lists(Field\ r)|$   
**using**  $card-of-lists\ card-of-Field-ordIso\ ordIso-ordLeq-trans\ ordIso-symmetric$  **by**  
 $blast$

**lemma**  $Union-set-lists$ :  $\bigcup (set\ ' (lists\ A)) = A$   
**proof** –  
**{ fix**  $a$  **assume**  $a \in A$   
**hence**  $set\ [a] \leq A \wedge a \in set\ [a]$  **by**  $auto$   
**hence**  $\exists l. set\ l \leq A \wedge a \in set\ l$  **by**  $blast$  **}**  
**then show**  $?thesis$  **by**  $force$   
**qed**

**lemma**  $inj-on-map-lists$ :  
**assumes**  $inj-on\ f\ A$   
**shows**  $inj-on\ (map\ f)\ (lists\ A)$   
**using**  $assms\ Union-set-lists[of\ A]\ inj-on-mapI[of\ f\ lists\ A]$  **by**  $auto$

**lemma**  $map-lists-mono$ :  
**assumes**  $f\ ' A \leq B$   
**shows**  $(map\ f)\ ' (lists\ A) \leq lists\ B$   
**using**  $assms$  **by**  $force$

**lemma**  $map-lists-surjective$ :  
**assumes**  $f\ ' A = B$   
**shows**  $(map\ f)\ ' (lists\ A) = lists\ B$   
**by**  $(metis\ assms\ lists-image)$

**lemma**  $bij-betw-map-lists$ :  
**assumes**  $bij-betw\ f\ A\ B$   
**shows**  $bij-betw\ (map\ f)\ (lists\ A)\ (lists\ B)$   
**using**  $assms\ unfolding\ bij-betw-def$   
**by**  $(auto\ simp: inj-on-map-lists\ map-lists-surjective)$

**lemma**  $card-of-lists-mono[simp]$ :  
**assumes**  $|A| \leq_o |B|$   
**shows**  $|lists\ A| \leq_o |lists\ B|$   
**proof** –  
**obtain**  $f$  **where**  $inj-on\ f\ A \wedge f\ ' A \leq B$   
**using**  $assms\ card-of-ordLeq[of\ A\ B]$  **by**  $auto$   
**hence**  $inj-on\ (map\ f)\ (lists\ A) \wedge (map\ f)\ ' (lists\ A) \leq (lists\ B)$   
**by**  $(auto\ simp: inj-on-map-lists\ map-lists-mono)$

**thus** *?thesis* **using** *card-of-ordLeq[of lists A]* **by** *metis*  
**qed**

**lemma** *ordIso-lists-mono*:  
**assumes**  $r \leq_o r'$   
**shows**  $|lists(Field\ r)| \leq_o |lists(Field\ r')|$   
**using** *assms card-of-mono2 card-of-lists-mono* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *card-of-lists-cong[simp]*:  
**assumes**  $|A| =_o |B|$   
**shows**  $|lists\ A| =_o |lists\ B|$   
**by** (*meson assms card-of-lists-mono ordIso-iff-ordLeq*)

**lemma** *card-of-lists-infinite[simp]*:  
**assumes**  $\neg finite\ A$   
**shows**  $|lists\ A| =_o |A|$   
**proof** –  
**have**  $|lists\ A| \leq_o |A|$  **unfolding** *lists-UNION-nlists*  
**by** (*rule card-of-UNION-ordLeq-infinite[OF assms - ballI[OF card-of-nlists-infinite[OF assms]]]*)  
*(metis infinite-iff-card-of-nat assms)*  
**thus** *?thesis* **using** *card-of-lists ordIso-iff-ordLeq* **by** *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *Card-order-lists-infinite*:  
**assumes** *Card-order*  $r$  **and**  $\neg finite(Field\ r)$   
**shows**  $|lists(Field\ r)| =_o r$   
**using** *assms card-of-lists-infinite card-of-Field-ordIso ordIso-transitive* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *ordIso-lists-cong*:  
**assumes**  $r =_o r'$   
**shows**  $|lists(Field\ r)| =_o |lists(Field\ r')|$   
**using** *assms card-of-cong card-of-lists-cong* **by** *blast*

**corollary** *lists-infinite-bij-betw*:  
**assumes**  $\neg finite\ A$   
**shows**  $\exists f. bij\_betw\ f\ (lists\ A)\ A$   
**using** *assms card-of-lists-infinite card-of-ordIso* **by** *blast*

**corollary** *lists-infinite-bij-betw-types*:  
**assumes**  $\neg finite(UNIV :: 'a\ set)$   
**shows**  $\exists (f :: 'a\ list \Rightarrow 'a). bij\ f$   
**using** *assms lists-infinite-bij-betw* **by** *fastforce*

## 10.5 Cardinals versus the finite powerset operator

**lemma** *card-of-Fpow[simp]*:  $|A| \leq_o |Fpow\ A|$   
**proof** –  
**let**  $?h = \lambda a. \{a\}$

**have** *inj-on* ?*h*  $A \wedge ?h \text{ ' } A \leq \text{Fpow } A$   
**unfolding** *inj-on-def* *Fpow-def* **by** *auto*  
**thus** ?*thesis* **using** *card-of-ordLeq* **by** *metis*  
**qed**

**lemma** *Card-order-Fpow*: *Card-order*  $r \implies r \leq_o |\text{Fpow}(\text{Field } r)|$   
**using** *card-of-Fpow* *card-of-Field-ordIso* *ordIso-ordLeq-trans* *ordIso-symmetric* **by**  
*blast*

**lemma** *image-Fpow-surjective*:  
**assumes**  $f \text{ ' } A = B$   
**shows**  $(\text{image } f) \text{ ' } (\text{Fpow } A) = \text{Fpow } B$   
**proof** –  
**have**  $\bigwedge C. \llbracket C \subseteq f \text{ ' } A; \text{finite } C \rrbracket \implies C \in (\cdot) f \text{ ' } \{X. X \subseteq A \wedge \text{finite } X\}$   
**by** (*simp add: finite-subset-image image-iff*)  
**then show** ?*thesis*  
**using** *assms* **by** (*force simp add: Fpow-def*)  
**qed**

**lemma** *bij-betw-image-Fpow*:  
**assumes** *bij-betw*  $f \text{ ' } A \text{ ' } B$   
**shows** *bij-betw*  $(\text{image } f) \text{ ' } (\text{Fpow } A) \text{ ' } (\text{Fpow } B)$   
**using** *assms* **unfolding** *bij-betw-def*  
**by** (*auto simp: inj-on-image-Fpow image-Fpow-surjective*)

**lemma** *card-of-Fpow-mono[simp]*:  
**assumes**  $|A| \leq_o |B|$   
**shows**  $|\text{Fpow } A| \leq_o |\text{Fpow } B|$   
**proof** –  
**obtain**  $f$  **where** *inj-on*  $f \text{ ' } A \wedge f \text{ ' } A \leq B$   
**using** *assms* *card-of-ordLeq[of A B]* **by** *auto*  
**hence** *inj-on*  $(\text{image } f) \text{ ' } (\text{Fpow } A) \wedge (\text{image } f) \text{ ' } (\text{Fpow } A) \leq (\text{Fpow } B)$   
**by** (*auto simp: inj-on-image-Fpow image-Fpow-mono*)  
**thus** ?*thesis* **using** *card-of-ordLeq[of Fpow A]* **by** *auto*  
**qed**

**lemma** *ordIso-Fpow-mono*:  
**assumes**  $r \leq_o r'$   
**shows**  $|\text{Fpow}(\text{Field } r)| \leq_o |\text{Fpow}(\text{Field } r')|$   
**using** *assms* *card-of-mono2* *card-of-Fpow-mono* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *card-of-Fpow-cong[simp]*:  
**assumes**  $|A| =_o |B|$   
**shows**  $|\text{Fpow } A| =_o |\text{Fpow } B|$   
**by** (*meson assms card-of-Fpow-mono ordIso-iff-ordLeq*)

**lemma** *ordIso-Fpow-cong*:  
**assumes**  $r =_o r'$   
**shows**  $|\text{Fpow}(\text{Field } r)| =_o |\text{Fpow}(\text{Field } r')|$

**using** *assms card-of-cong card-of-Fpow-cong* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *card-of-Fpow-lists*:  $|Fpow\ A| \leq_o |lists\ A|$   
**proof** –  
**have** *set* ‘ $(lists\ A) = Fpow\ A$   
**unfolding** *lists-eq-set Fpow-def* **using** *finite-list finite-set* **by** *blast*  
**thus** *?thesis* **using** *card-of-ordLeq2[of Fpow A] Fpow-not-empty[of A]* **by** *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *card-of-Fpow-infinite[simp]*:  
**assumes**  $\neg finite\ A$   
**shows**  $|Fpow\ A| =_o |A|$   
**using** *assms card-of-Fpow-lists card-of-lists-infinite card-of-Fpow*  
*ordLeq-ordIso-trans ordIso-iff-ordLeq* **by** *blast*

**corollary** *Fpow-infinite-bij-betw*:  
**assumes**  $\neg finite\ A$   
**shows**  $\exists f. bij\_betw\ f\ (Fpow\ A)\ A$   
**using** *assms card-of-Fpow-infinite card-of-ordIso* **by** *blast*

## 10.6 The cardinal $\omega$ and the finite cardinals

### 10.6.1 First as well-orders

**lemma** *Field-natLess*:  $Field\ natLess = (UNIV::nat\ set)$   
**by** *(auto simp: Field-def natLess-def)*

**lemma** *natLeq-well-order-on*: *well-order-on UNIV natLeq*  
**using** *natLeq-Well-order Field-natLeq* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *natLeq-wo-rel*: *wo-rel natLeq*  
**unfolding** *wo-rel-def* **using** *natLeq-Well-order* .

**lemma** *natLeq-ofilter-less*: *ofilter natLeq  $\{0 \dots n\}$*   
**proof** –  
**have**  $\forall t < n. t \in Field\ natLeq$   
**by** *(simp add: Field-natLeq)*  
**moreover have**  $\forall x < n. \forall t. (t, x) \in natLeq \longrightarrow t < n$   
**by** *(simp add: natLeq-def)*  
**ultimately show** *?thesis*  
**by** *(auto simp: natLeq-wo-rel wo-rel.ofilter-def under-def)*  
**qed**

**lemma** *natLeq-ofilter-leq*: *ofilter natLeq  $\{0 \dots n\}$*   
**by** *(metis (no-types) atLeastLessThanSuc-atLeastAtMost natLeq-ofilter-less)*

**lemma** *natLeq-UNIV-ofilter*: *wo-rel.ofilter natLeq UNIV*  
**using** *natLeq-wo-rel Field-natLeq wo-rel.Field-ofilter[of natLeq]* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *closed-nat-set-iff*:

**assumes**  $\forall (m::nat) \ n. \ n \in A \wedge m \leq n \longrightarrow m \in A$   
**shows**  $A = UNIV \vee (\exists n. A = \{0 ..< n\})$   
**proof** –  
 {**assume**  $A \neq UNIV$  **hence**  $\exists n. n \notin A$  **by** *blast*  
   **moreover obtain**  $n$  **where**  $n\text{-def}: n = (LEAST \ n. \ n \notin A)$  **by** *blast*  
   **ultimately have**  $1: n \notin A \wedge (\forall m. m < n \longrightarrow m \in A)$   
     **using** *LeastI-ex*[*of*  $\lambda \ n. \ n \notin A$ ]  $n\text{-def}$  *Least-le*[*of*  $\lambda \ n. \ n \notin A$ ] **by** *fastforce*  
   **then have**  $A = \{0 ..< n\}$   
   **proof**(*auto simp: 1*)  
     **fix**  $m$  **assume**  $*$ ;  $m \in A$   
     {**assume**  $n \leq m$  **with** *assms*  $*$  **have**  $n \in A$  **by** *blast*  
       **hence** *False* **using**  $1$  **by** *auto*  
     }  
     **thus**  $m < n$  **by** *fastforce*  
   **qed**  
   **hence**  $\exists n. A = \{0 ..< n\}$  **by** *blast*  
 }  
**thus** *?thesis* **by** *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *natLeq-ofilter-iff*:  
 $ofilter \ natLeq \ A = (A = UNIV \vee (\exists n. A = \{0 ..< n\}))$   
**proof**(*rule iffI*)  
   **assume**  $ofilter \ natLeq \ A$   
   **hence**  $\forall m \ n. \ n \in A \wedge m \leq n \longrightarrow m \in A$  **using** *natLeq-wo-rel*  
     **by**(*auto simp: natLeq-def wo-rel.ofilter-def under-def*)  
   **thus**  $A = UNIV \vee (\exists n. A = \{0 ..< n\})$  **using** *closed-nat-set-iff* **by** *blast*  
**next**  
   **assume**  $A = UNIV \vee (\exists n. A = \{0 ..< n\})$   
   **thus**  $ofilter \ natLeq \ A$   
     **by**(*auto simp: natLeq-ofilter-less natLeq-UNIV-ofilter*)  
**qed**

**lemma** *natLeq-under-leq*:  $under \ natLeq \ n = \{0 .. n\}$   
**unfolding** *under-def natLeq-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *natLeq-on-ofilter-less-eq*:  
 $n \leq m \implies wo\text{-rel}.ofilter \ (natLeq\text{-on} \ m) \ \{0 ..< n\}$   
**by** (*auto simp: natLeq-on-wo-rel wo-rel.ofilter-def Field-natLeq-on under-def*)

**lemma** *natLeq-on-ofilter-iff*:  
 $wo\text{-rel}.ofilter \ (natLeq\text{-on} \ m) \ A = (\exists n \leq m. A = \{0 ..< n\})$   
**proof**(*rule iffI*)  
   **assume**  $*$ ;  $wo\text{-rel}.ofilter \ (natLeq\text{-on} \ m) \ A$   
   **hence**  $1: A \leq \{0 ..< m\}$   
     **by** (*auto simp: natLeq-on-wo-rel wo-rel.ofilter-def under-def Field-natLeq-on*)  
   **hence**  $\forall n1 \ n2. \ n2 \in A \wedge n1 \leq n2 \longrightarrow n1 \in A$   
     **using**  $*$  **by**(*fastforce simp add: natLeq-on-wo-rel wo-rel.ofilter-def under-def*)  
   **hence**  $A = UNIV \vee (\exists n. A = \{0 ..< n\})$  **using** *closed-nat-set-iff* **by** *blast*



**thus**  $\exists n \leq m. A = \{0 \dots n\}$  **using** 1 *atLeastLessThan-less-eq* **by** blast  
**next**  
**assume**  $(\exists n \leq m. A = \{0 \dots n\})$   
**thus** *wo-rel.ofilter* (*natLeq-on*  $m$ )  $A$  **by** (*auto simp: natLeq-on-ofilter-less-eq*)  
**qed**

**corollary** *natLeq-on-ofilter*:  
*ofilter*(*natLeq-on*  $n$ )  $\{0 \dots n\}$   
**by** (*auto simp: natLeq-on-ofilter-less-eq*)

**lemma** *natLeq-on-ofilter-less*:  
**assumes**  $n < m$  **shows** *ofilter* (*natLeq-on*  $m$ )  $\{0 \dots n\}$   
**proof** –  
**have**  $Suc\ n \leq m$   
**using** *assms* **by** *simp*  
**then show** ?thesis  
**using** *natLeq-on-ofilter-iff* **by** *auto*  
**qed**

**lemma** *natLeq-on-ordLess-natLeq*: *natLeq-on*  $n <_o$  *natLeq*  
**proof** –  
**have** *well-order* *natLeq*  
**using** *Field-natLeq* *natLeq-Well-order* **by** *auto*  
**moreover have**  $\bigwedge n. \text{well-order-on } \{na. na < n\} \text{ (natLeq-on } n)$   
**using** *Field-natLeq-on* *natLeq-on-Well-order* **by** *presburger*  
**ultimately show** ?thesis  
**by** (*simp add: Field-natLeq Field-natLeq-on finite-ordLess-infinite*)  
**qed**

**lemma** *natLeq-on-injective*:  
*natLeq-on*  $m = \text{natLeq-on } n \implies m = n$   
**using** *Field-natLeq-on*[*of*  $m$ ] *Field-natLeq-on*[*of*  $n$ ]  
*atLeastLessThan-injective*[*of*  $m\ n$ , *unfolded atLeastLessThan-def*] **by** *blast*

**lemma** *natLeq-on-injective-ordIso*:  
 $(\text{natLeq-on } m =_o \text{natLeq-on } n) = (m = n)$   
**proof**(*auto simp: natLeq-on-Well-order ordIso-reflexive*)  
**assume** *natLeq-on*  $m =_o$  *natLeq-on*  $n$   
**then obtain**  $f$  **where** *bij-betw*  $f \{x. x < m\} \{x. x < n\}$   
**using** *Field-natLeq-on* **unfolding** *ordIso-def iso-def*[*abs-def*] **by** *auto*  
**thus**  $m = n$  **using** *atLeastLessThan-injective2*[*of*  $f\ m\ n$ ]  
**unfolding** *atLeast-0 atLeastLessThan-def lessThan-def Int-UNIV-left* **by** *blast*  
**qed**

## 10.6.2 Then as cardinals

**lemma** *ordIso-natLeq-infinite1*:  
 $|A| =_o \text{natLeq} \implies \neg \text{finite } A$   
**by** (*meson finite-iff-ordLess-natLeq not-ordLess-ordIso*)

```

lemma ordIso-natLeq-infinite2:
  natLeq =o |A|  $\implies \neg$ finite A
  using ordIso-imp-ordLeq infinite-iff-natLeq-ordLeq by blast

lemma ordIso-natLeq-on-imp-finite:
  |A| =o natLeq-on n  $\implies$  finite A
  unfolding ordIso-def iso-def[abs-def]
  by (auto simp: Field-natLeq-on bij-betw-finite)

lemma natLeq-on-Card-order: Card-order (natLeq-on n)
proof –
  { fix r assume well-order-on {x. x < n} r
    hence natLeq-on n  $\leq_o$  r
    using finite-atLeastLessThan natLeq-on-well-order-on
      finite-well-order-on-ordIso ordIso-iff-ordLeq by blast
  }
  then show ?thesis
    unfolding card-order-on-def using Field-natLeq-on natLeq-on-Well-order by
presburger
qed

corollary card-of-Field-natLeq-on:
  |Field (natLeq-on n)| =o natLeq-on n
  using Field-natLeq-on natLeq-on-Card-order
    Card-order-iff-ordIso-card-of[of natLeq-on n]
    ordIso-symmetric[of natLeq-on n] by blast

corollary card-of-less:
  |\{0 ..< n\}| =o natLeq-on n
  using Field-natLeq-on card-of-Field-natLeq-on
  unfolding atLeast-0 atLeastLessThan-def lessThan-def Int-UNIV-left by auto

lemma natLeq-on-ordLeq-less-eq:
  ((natLeq-on m)  $\leq_o$  (natLeq-on n)) = (m  $\leq$  n)
proof
  assume natLeq-on m  $\leq_o$  natLeq-on n
  then obtain f where inj-on f {x. x < m}  $\wedge$  f ‘ {x. x < m}  $\leq$  {x. x < n}
  unfolding ordLeq-def using
    embed-inj-on[OF natLeq-on-Well-order[of m], of natLeq-on n, unfolded Field-natLeq-on]
    embed-Field Field-natLeq-on by blast
  thus m  $\leq$  n using atLeastLessThan-less-eq2
  unfolding atLeast-0 atLeastLessThan-def lessThan-def Int-UNIV-left by blast
next
  assume m  $\leq$  n
  hence inj-on id {0.. $<$ m}  $\wedge$  id ‘ {0.. $<$ m}  $\leq$  {0.. $<$ n} unfolding inj-on-def by
auto
  hence |\{0.. $<$ m\}|  $\leq_o$  |\{0.. $<$ n\}| using card-of-ordLeq by blast
  thus natLeq-on m  $\leq_o$  natLeq-on n

```

**using** *card-of-less ordIso-ordLeq-trans ordLeq-ordIso-trans ordIso-symmetric* **by**  
*blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *natLeq-on-ordLeq-less*:  
 $((\text{natLeq-on } m) <_o (\text{natLeq-on } n)) = (m < n)$   
**using** *not-ordLeq-iff-ordLess[OF natLeq-on-Well-order natLeq-on-Well-order, of*  
*n m]*  
*natLeq-on-ordLeq-less-eq[of n m]* **by** *linarith*

**lemma** *ordLeq-natLeq-on-imp-finite*:  
**assumes**  $|A| \leq_o \text{natLeq-on } n$   
**shows** *finite A*  
**proof** –  
**have**  $|A| \leq_o |\{0 \dots n\}|$   
**using** *assms card-of-less ordIso-symmetric ordLeq-ordIso-trans* **by** *blast*  
**thus** *?thesis* **by** (*auto simp: card-of-ordLeq-finite*)  
**qed**

### 10.6.3 "Backward compatibility" with the numeric cardinal operator for finite sets

**lemma** *finite-card-of-iff-card2*:  
**assumes** *FIN: finite A and FIN': finite B*  
**shows**  $(|A| \leq_o |B|) = (\text{card } A \leq \text{card } B)$   
**using** *assms card-of-ordLeq[of A B] inj-on-iff-card-le[of A B]* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *finite-imp-card-of-natLeq-on*:  
**assumes** *finite A*  
**shows**  $|A| =_o \text{natLeq-on } (\text{card } A)$   
**proof** –  
**obtain** *h* **where** *bij-betw h A {0 ..< card A}*  
**using** *assms ex-bij-betw-finite-nat* **by** *blast*  
**thus** *?thesis* **using** *card-of-ordIso card-of-less ordIso-equivalence* **by** *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *finite-iff-card-of-natLeq-on*:  
 $\text{finite } A = (\exists n. |A| =_o \text{natLeq-on } n)$   
**using** *finite-imp-card-of-natLeq-on[of A]*  
**by** (*auto simp: ordIso-natLeq-on-imp-finite*)

**lemma** *finite-card-of-iff-card*:  
**assumes** *FIN: finite A and FIN': finite B*  
**shows**  $(|A| =_o |B|) = (\text{card } A = \text{card } B)$   
**using** *assms card-of-ordIso[of A B] bij-betw-iff-card[of A B]* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *finite-card-of-iff-card3*:  
**assumes** *FIN: finite A and FIN': finite B*  
**shows**  $(|A| <_o |B|) = (\text{card } A < \text{card } B)$

**proof** –  
 have (  $|A| <_o |B|$  ) = (  $\sim (|B| \leq_o |A|)$  ) **by** *simp*  
 also have ... = (  $\sim (\text{card } B \leq \text{card } A)$  )  
 using *assms* **by** (*simp add: finite-card-of-iff-card2*)  
 also have ... = (  $\text{card } A < \text{card } B$  ) **by** *auto*  
 finally show ?thesis .  
**qed**

**lemma** *card-Field-natLeq-on*:  
 $\text{card}(\text{Field}(\text{natLeq-on } n)) = n$   
 using *Field-natLeq-on card-atLeastLessThan* **by** *auto*

## 10.7 The successor of a cardinal

**lemma** *embed-implies-ordIso-Restr*:  
 assumes *WELL*: *Well-order*  $r$  and *WELL'*: *Well-order*  $r'$  and *EMB*: *embed*  $r'$   
 $r \text{ f}$   
 shows  $r' =_o \text{Restr } r \text{ (f ` (Field } r'))$   
 using *assms embed-implies-iso-Restr Well-order-Restr* **unfolding** *ordIso-def* **by**  
*blast*

**lemma** *cardSuc-mono-ordLess[simp]*:  
 assumes *CARD*: *Card-order*  $r$  and *CARD'*: *Card-order*  $r'$   
 shows (  $\text{cardSuc } r <_o \text{cardSuc } r'$  ) = (  $r <_o r'$  )  
**proof** –  
 have  $0$ : *Well-order*  $r \wedge \text{Well-order } r' \wedge \text{Well-order}(\text{cardSuc } r) \wedge \text{Well-order}(\text{cardSuc } r')$   
 using *assms* **by** *auto*  
 thus ?thesis  
 using *not-ordLeq-iff-ordLess not-ordLeq-iff-ordLess[of r r']*  
 using *cardSuc-mono-ordLeq[of r' r] assms* **by** *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *cardSuc-natLeq-on-Suc*:  
 $\text{cardSuc}(\text{natLeq-on } n) =_o \text{natLeq-on}(\text{Suc } n)$   
**proof** –  
 obtain  $r \ r' \ p$  where  $r\text{-def}$ :  $r = \text{natLeq-on } n$  and  
 $r'\text{-def}$ :  $r' = \text{cardSuc}(\text{natLeq-on } n)$  and  
 $p\text{-def}$ :  $p = \text{natLeq-on}(\text{Suc } n)$  **by** *blast*  
  
 have *CARD*: *Card-order*  $r \wedge \text{Card-order } r' \wedge \text{Card-order } p$  **unfolding**  $r\text{-def } r'\text{-def } p\text{-def}$   
 using *cardSuc-ordLess-ordLeq natLeq-on-Card-order cardSuc-Card-order* **by**  
*blast*  
 hence *WELL*: *Well-order*  $r \wedge \text{Well-order } r' \wedge \text{Well-order } p$   
**unfolding** *card-order-on-def* **by** *force*  
 have *FIELD*: *Field*  $r = \{0..<n\} \wedge \text{Field } p = \{0..<(\text{Suc } n)\}$   
**unfolding**  $r\text{-def } p\text{-def}$  *Field-natLeq-on atLeast-0 atLeastLessThan-def lessThan-def*  
**by** *simp*

hence *FIN*: *finite* (*Field* *r*) **by** *force*  
 have  $r <_o r'$  **using** *CARD* *unfolding* *r-def* *r'-def* **using** *cardSuc-greater* **by**  
*blast*  
 hence  $|Field\ r| <_o r'$  **using** *CARD* *card-of-Field-ordIso* *ordIso-ordLess-trans* **by**  
*blast*  
 hence *LESS*:  $|Field\ r| <_o |Field\ r'|$   
**using** *CARD* *card-of-Field-ordIso* *ordLess-ordIso-trans* *ordIso-symmetric* **by**  
*blast*

have  $r' \leq_o p$  **using** *CARD* *unfolding* *r-def* *r'-def* *p-def*  
**using** *natLeq-on-ordLeq-less* *cardSuc-ordLess-ordLeq* **by** *blast*  
 moreover have  $p \leq_o r'$   
 proof–  
 {assume  $r' <_o p$   
 then obtain *f* where  $0: embedS\ r'\ p\ f$  **unfolding** *ordLess-def* **by** *force*  
 let  $?q = Restr\ p\ (f\ 'Field\ r')$   
 have  $1: embed\ r'\ p\ f$  **using**  $0$  **unfolding** *embedS-def* **by** *force*  
 hence  $2: f\ 'Field\ r' < \{0..<(Suc\ n)\}$   
**using** *WELL FIELD*  $0$  **by** (*auto simp: embedS-iff*)  
 have *wo-rel.ofilter*  $p\ (f\ 'Field\ r')$  **using** *embed-Field-ofilter*  $1\ WELL$  **by** *blast*  
 then obtain *m* where  $m \leq Suc\ n$  and  $3: f\ '(Field\ r') = \{0..<m\}$   
**unfolding** *p-def* **by** (*auto simp: natLeq-on-ofilter-iff*)  
 hence  $4: m \leq n$  **using**  $2$  **by** *force*

have *bij-betw*  $f\ (Field\ r')\ (f\ '(Field\ r'))$   
**using** *WELL embed-inj-on* [*OF* -  $1$ ] **unfolding** *bij-betw-def* **by** *blast*  
 moreover have *finite*( $f\ '(Field\ r')$ ) **using**  $3$  *finite-atLeastLessThan* [*of*  $0\ m$ ]  
**by** *force*  
 ultimately have  $5: finite\ (Field\ r') \wedge card(Field\ r') = card\ (f\ '(Field\ r'))$   
**using** *bij-betw-same-card* *bij-betw-finite* **by** *metis*  
 hence  $card(Field\ r') \leq card(Field\ r)$  **using**  $3\ 4\ FIELD$  **by** *force*  
 hence  $|Field\ r'| \leq_o |Field\ r|$  **using** *FIN*  $5$  *finite-card-of-iff-card2* **by** *blast*  
 hence *False* **using** *LESS not-ordLess-ordLeq* **by** *auto*  
 }  
 thus *?thesis* **using** *WELL CARD* **by** *fastforce*  
 qed  
 ultimately show *?thesis* **using** *ordIso-iff-ordLeq* **unfolding** *r'-def* *p-def* **by**  
*blast*  
 qed

**lemma** *card-of-Plus-ordLeq-infinite*[*simp*]:  
 assumes  $\neg finite\ C$  and  $|A| \leq_o |C|$  and  $|B| \leq_o |C|$   
 shows  $|A\ <+>\ B| \leq_o |C|$   
**by** (*simp add: assms*)

**lemma** *card-of-Un-ordLeq-infinite*[*simp*]:  
 assumes  $\neg finite\ C$  and  $|A| \leq_o |C|$  and  $|B| \leq_o |C|$   
 shows  $|A\ Un\ B| \leq_o |C|$   
**using** *assms card-of-Plus-ordLeq-infinite card-of-Un-Plus-ordLeq ordLeq-transitive*

by *metis*

## 10.8 Others

**lemma** *under-mono[simp]*:  
 assumes *Well-order*  $r$  and  $(i,j) \in r$   
 shows  $\text{under } r \ i \subseteq \text{under } r \ j$   
 using *assms* **unfolding** *under-def order-on-defs trans-def* **by** *blast*

**lemma** *underS-under*:  
 assumes  $i \in \text{Field } r$   
 shows  $\text{underS } r \ i = \text{under } r \ i - \{i\}$   
 using *assms* **unfolding** *underS-def under-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *relChain-under*:  
 assumes *Well-order*  $r$   
 shows  $\text{relChain } r \ (\lambda i. \text{under } r \ i)$   
 using *assms* **unfolding** *relChain-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *card-of-infinite-diff-finite*:  
 assumes  $\neg \text{finite } A$  and *finite*  $B$   
 shows  $|A - B| =_o |A|$   
 by (*metis* *assms* *card-of-Un-diff-infinite finite-ordLess-infinite2*)

**lemma** *infinite-card-of-diff-singl*:  
 assumes  $\neg \text{finite } A$   
 shows  $|A - \{a\}| =_o |A|$   
 by (*metis* *assms* *card-of-infinite-diff-finite finite.emptyI finite.insert*)

**lemma** *card-of-vimage*:  
 assumes  $B \subseteq \text{range } f$   
 shows  $|B| \leq_o |f -' B|$   
 by (*metis* *Int-absorb2 assms image-vimage-eq order-refl surj-imp-ordLeq*)

**lemma** *surj-card-of-vimage*:  
 assumes *surj*  $f$   
 shows  $|B| \leq_o |f -' B|$   
 by (*metis* *assms* *card-of-vimage subset-UNIV*)

**definition** *Bpow* **where**  
 $Bpow \ r \ A \equiv \{X . X \subseteq A \wedge |X| \leq_o r\}$

**lemma** *Bpow-empty[simp]*:  
 assumes *Card-order*  $r$   
 shows  $Bpow \ r \ \{\} = \{\{\}\}$   
 using *assms* **unfolding** *Bpow-def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *singl-in-Bpow*:

```

assumes rc: Card-order r
and r: Field r  $\neq \{\}$  and a:  $a \in A$ 
shows  $\{a\} \in Bpow\ r\ A$ 
proof –
  have  $|\{a\}| \leq o\ r$  using r rc by auto
  thus ?thesis unfolding Bpow-def using a by auto
qed

```

```

lemma ordLeq-card-Bpow:
  assumes rc: Card-order r and r: Field r  $\neq \{\}$ 
  shows  $|A| \leq o\ Bpow\ r\ A$ 
proof –
  have inj-on  $(\lambda\ a.\ \{a\})\ A$  unfolding inj-on-def by auto
  moreover have  $(\lambda\ a.\ \{a\})\ 'A \subseteq Bpow\ r\ A$ 
    using singl-in-Bpow[OF assms] by auto
  ultimately show ?thesis unfolding card-of-ordLeq[symmetric] by blast
qed

```

```

lemma infinite-Bpow:
  assumes rc: Card-order r and r: Field r  $\neq \{\}$ 
  and A:  $\neg finite\ A$ 
  shows  $\neg finite\ (Bpow\ r\ A)$ 
  using ordLeq-card-Bpow[OF rc r]
  by (metis A card-of-ordLeq-infinite)

```

```

definition Func-option where
  Func-option A B  $\equiv$ 
   $\{f. (\forall\ a.\ f\ a \neq None \longleftrightarrow a \in A) \wedge (\forall\ a \in A.\ case\ f\ a\ of\ Some\ b \Rightarrow b \in B\ |\ None \Rightarrow True)\}$ 

```

```

lemma card-of-Func-option-Func:
   $|Func-option\ A\ B| = o\ |Func\ A\ B|$ 
proof (rule ordIso-symmetric, unfold card-of-ordIso[symmetric], intro exI)
  let ?F =  $\lambda\ f\ a.\ if\ a \in A\ then\ Some\ (f\ a)\ else\ None$ 
  show bij-betw ?F (Func A B) (Func-option A B)
    unfolding bij-betw-def unfolding inj-on-def proof (intro conjI ballI impI)
    fix f g assume f:  $f \in Func\ A\ B$  and g:  $g \in Func\ A\ B$  and eq:  $?F\ f = ?F\ g$ 
    show  $f = g$ 
    proof (rule ext)
      fix a
      show  $f\ a = g\ a$ 
      by (smt (verit) Func-def eq f g mem-Collect-eq option.inject)
    qed
  next
  show ?F '  $Func\ A\ B = Func-option\ A\ B$ 
  proof safe
    fix f assume f:  $f \in Func-option\ A\ B$ 
    define g where [abs-def]:  $g\ a = (case\ f\ a\ of\ Some\ b \Rightarrow b\ |\ None \Rightarrow undefined)$ 
  for a

```

```

have g ∈ Func A B
  using f unfolding g-def Func-def Func-option-def by force+
moreover have f = ?F g
proof(rule ext)
  fix a show f a = ?F g a
    using f unfolding Func-option-def g-def by (cases a ∈ A) force+
qed
ultimately show f ∈ ?F ‘ (Func A B) by blast
qed(unfold Func-def Func-option-def, auto)
qed
qed

```

**definition** *Pfunc* where

```

Pfunc A B ≡
{f. (∀ a. f a ≠ None ⟶ a ∈ A) ∧
  (∀ a. case f a of None ⇒ True | Some b ⇒ b ∈ B)}

```

**lemma** *Func-Pfunc*:

```

Func-option A B ⊆ Pfunc A B
unfolding Func-option-def Pfunc-def by auto

```

**lemma** *Pfunc-Func-option*:

```

Pfunc A B = (⋃ A' ∈ Pow A. Func-option A' B)
proof safe
  fix f assume f: f ∈ Pfunc A B
  show f ∈ (⋃ A' ∈ Pow A. Func-option A' B)
  proof (intro UN-I)
    let ?A' = {a. f a ≠ None}
    show ?A' ∈ Pow A using f unfolding Pow-def Pfunc-def by auto
    show f ∈ Func-option ?A' B using f unfolding Func-option-def Pfunc-def
  by auto
  qed
next
  fix f A' assume f ∈ Func-option A' B and A' ⊆ A
  thus f ∈ Pfunc A B unfolding Func-option-def Pfunc-def by auto
qed

```

**lemma** *card-of-Func-mono*:

```

fixes A1 A2 :: 'a set and B :: 'b set
assumes A12: A1 ⊆ A2 and B: B ≠ {}
shows |Func A1 B| ≤o |Func A2 B|
proof-
  obtain bb where bb: bb ∈ B using B by auto
  define F where [abs-def]: F f1 a =
    (if a ∈ A2 then (if a ∈ A1 then f1 a else bb) else undefined) for f1 :: 'a ⇒ 'b
  and a
  show ?thesis unfolding card-of-ordLeq[symmetric]
  proof(intro exI[of - F] conjI)

```



```

show inj-on F (Func A1 B) unfolding inj-on-def
proof safe
  fix f g assume f: f ∈ Func A1 B and g: g ∈ Func A1 B and eq: F f = F g
  show f = g
  proof(rule ext)
    fix a show f a = g a
    by (smt (verit) A12 F-def Func-def eq f g mem-Collect-eq subsetD)
  qed
qed
qed(insert bb, unfold Func-def F-def, force)
qed

lemma card-of-Func-option-mono:
  fixes A1 A2 :: 'a set and B :: 'b set
  assumes A12: A1 ⊆ A2 and B: B ≠ {}
  shows |Func-option A1 B| ≤o |Func-option A2 B|
  by (metis card-of-Func-mono[OF A12 B] card-of-Func-option-Func
    ordIso-ordLeq-trans ordLeq-ordIso-trans ordIso-symmetric)

lemma card-of-Pfunc-Pow-Func-option:
  assumes B ≠ {}
  shows |Pfunc A B| ≤o |Pow A × Func-option A B|
proof–
  have |Pfunc A B| =o |⋃ A' ∈ Pow A. Func-option A' B| (is - =o ?K)
  unfolding Pfunc-Func-option by(rule card-of-refl)
  also have ?K ≤o |Sigma (Pow A) (λ A'. Func-option A' B)| using card-of-UNION-Sigma
  .
  also have |Sigma (Pow A) (λ A'. Func-option A' B)| ≤o |Pow A × Func-option
A B|
  by (simp add: asms card-of-Func-option-mono card-of-Sigma-mono1)
  finally show ?thesis .
qed

lemma Bpow-ordLeq-Func-Field:
  assumes rc: Card-order r and r: Field r ≠ {} and A: ¬finite A
  shows |Bpow r A| ≤o |Func (Field r) A|
proof–
  let ?F = λ f. {x | x a. f a = x ∧ a ∈ Field r}
  {fix X assume X ∈ Bpow r A - {{}}
    hence XA: X ⊆ A and |X| ≤o r
    and X: X ≠ {} unfolding Bpow-def by auto
    hence |X| ≤o |Field r| by (metis Field-card-of card-of-mono2)
    then obtain F where 1: X = F ' (Field r)
    using card-of-ordLeq2[OF X] by metis
    define f where [abs-def]: f i = (if i ∈ Field r then F i else undefined) for i
    have ∃ f ∈ Func (Field r) A. X = ?F f
    apply (intro bexI[of - f]) using 1 XA unfolding Func-def f-def by auto
  }
  hence Bpow r A - {{}} ⊆ ?F ' (Func (Field r) A) by auto

```

hence  $|Bpow\ r\ A - \{\{\}\}| \leq_o |Func\ (Field\ r)\ A|$   
 by (rule surj-imp-ordLeq)  
 moreover  
 {have 2:  $\neg finite\ (Bpow\ r\ A)$  using infinite-Bpow[OF rc r A] .  
 have  $|Bpow\ r\ A| =_o |Bpow\ r\ A - \{\{\}\}|$   
 by (metis 2 infinite-card-of-diff-singl ordIso-symmetric)  
 }  
 ultimately show ?thesis by (metis ordIso-ordLeq-trans)  
 qed

lemma empty-in-Func[simp]:  
 $B \neq \{\} \implies (\lambda x. undefined) \in Func\ \{\}\ B$   
 by simp

lemma Func-mono[simp]:  
 assumes  $B1 \subseteq B2$   
 shows  $Func\ A\ B1 \subseteq Func\ A\ B2$   
 using assms unfolding Func-def by force

lemma Pfunc-mono[simp]:  
 assumes  $A1 \subseteq A2$  and  $B1 \subseteq B2$   
 shows  $Pfunc\ A\ B1 \subseteq Pfunc\ A\ B2$   
 using assms unfolding Pfunc-def  
 by (force split: option.split-asm option.split)

lemma card-of-Func-UNIV-UNIV:  
 $|Func\ (UNIV::'a\ set)\ (UNIV::'b\ set)| =_o |UNIV::('a \Rightarrow 'b)\ set|$   
 using card-of-Func-UNIV[of UNIV::'b set] by auto

lemma ordLeq-Func:  
 assumes  $\{b1, b2\} \subseteq B$   $b1 \neq b2$   
 shows  $|A| \leq_o |Func\ A\ B|$   
 unfolding card-of-ordLeq[symmetric] proof(intro exI conjI)  
 let ?F =  $\lambda x\ a. \text{if } a \in A \text{ then } (\text{if } a = x \text{ then } b1 \text{ else } b2) \text{ else } undefined$   
 show inj-on ?F A using assms unfolding inj-on-def fun-eq-iff by auto  
 show ?F ' A  $\subseteq Func\ A\ B$  using assms unfolding Func-def by auto  
 qed

lemma infinite-Func:  
 assumes  $A: \neg finite\ A$  and  $B: \{b1, b2\} \subseteq B$   $b1 \neq b2$   
 shows  $\neg finite\ (Func\ A\ B)$   
 using ordLeq-Func[OF B] by (metis A card-of-ordLeq-finite)

## 10.9 Infinite cardinals are limit ordinals

lemma card-order-infinite-isLimOrd:  
 assumes  $c: Card\text{-}order\ r$  and  $i: \neg finite\ (Field\ r)$   
 shows isLimOrd r  
 proof –

```

have 0: wo-rel r and 00: Well-order r
  using c unfolding card-order-on-def wo-rel-def by auto
hence rr: Refl r by (metis wo-rel.REFL)
show ?thesis unfolding wo-rel.isLimOrd-def[OF 0] wo-rel.isSuccOrd-def[OF 0]

proof safe
  fix j assume j ∈ Field r and ∀ i ∈ Field r. (i, j) ∈ r
  then show False
    by (metis Card-order-trans c i infinite-Card-order-limit)
qed
qed

lemma insert-Chain:
  assumes Refl r C ∈ Chains r and i ∈ Field r and  $\bigwedge j. j \in C \implies (j, i) \in r \vee (i, j) \in r$ 
  shows insert i C ∈ Chains r
  using assms unfolding Chains-def by (auto dest: refl-onD)

lemma Collect-insert:  $\{R j \mid j. j \in \text{insert } j1 J\} = \text{insert } (R j1) \{R j \mid j. j \in J\}$ 
  by auto

lemma Field-init-seg-of[simp]:
  Field init-seg-of = UNIV
  unfolding Field-def init-seg-of-def by auto

lemma refl-init-seg-of[intro, simp]: refl init-seg-of
  unfolding refl-on-def Field-def by auto

lemma regularCard-all-ex:
  assumes r: Card-order r regularCard r
  and As:  $\bigwedge i j b. b \in B \implies (i, j) \in r \implies P i b \implies P j b$ 
  and Bsub:  $\forall b \in B. \exists i \in \text{Field } r. P i b$ 
  and cardB:  $|B| < o r$ 
  shows  $\exists i \in \text{Field } r. \forall b \in B. P i b$ 
proof-
  let ?As =  $\lambda i. \{b \in B. P i b\}$ 
  have  $\exists i \in \text{Field } r. B \leq ?As i$ 
  apply(rule regularCard-UNION) using assms unfolding relChain-def by auto
  thus ?thesis by auto
qed

lemma relChain-stabilize:
  assumes rc: relChain r As and AsB:  $(\bigcup i \in \text{Field } r. As i) \subseteq B$  and Br:  $|B| < o r$ 
  and ir:  $\neg \text{finite } (\text{Field } r)$  and cr: Card-order r
  shows  $\exists i \in \text{Field } r. As (\text{succ } r i) = As i$ 
proof(rule ccontr, auto)
  have 0: wo-rel r and 00: Well-order r
  unfolding wo-rel-def by (metis card-order-on-well-order-on cr)+

```

```

have L: isLimOrd r using ir cr by (metis card-order-infinite-isLimOrd)
have AsBs:  $(\bigcup i \in \text{Field } r. \text{As } (\text{succ } r \ i)) \subseteq B$ 
  using AsB L by (simp add: 0 Sup-le-iff wo-rel.isLimOrd-succ)
assume As-s:  $\forall i \in \text{Field } r. \text{As } (\text{succ } r \ i) \neq \text{As } i$ 
have 1:  $\forall i \ j. (i, j) \in r \wedge i \neq j \longrightarrow \text{As } i \subseteq \text{As } j$ 
proof safe
  fix i j assume 1:  $(i, j) \in r \ i \neq j$  and Asij:  $\text{As } i = \text{As } j$ 
  hence rij:  $(\text{succ } r \ i, j) \in r$  by (metis 0 wo-rel.succ-smallest)
  hence As  $(\text{succ } r \ i) \subseteq \text{As } j$  using rc unfolding relChain-def by auto
  moreover
  { have  $(i, \text{succ } r \ i) \in r$ 
    by (meson 0 1(1) FieldI1 L wo-rel.isLimOrd-aboveS wo-rel.succ-in)
    hence  $\text{As } i \subseteq \text{As } (\text{succ } r \ i)$  using As-s rc rij unfolding relChain-def Field-def
  }
  ultimately show False unfolding Asij by auto
qed (insert rc, unfold relChain-def, auto)
hence  $\forall i \in \text{Field } r. \exists a. a \in \text{As } (\text{succ } r \ i) - \text{As } i$ 
  using wo-rel.succ-in[OF 0] AsB
  by (metis 0 card-order-infinite-isLimOrd cr ir psubset-imp-ex-mem
    wo-rel.isLimOrd-aboveS wo-rel.succ-diff)
then obtain f where f:  $\forall i \in \text{Field } r. f \ i \in \text{As } (\text{succ } r \ i) - \text{As } i$  by metis
have inj-on f (Field r) unfolding inj-on-def
proof safe
  fix i j assume ij:  $i \in \text{Field } r \ j \in \text{Field } r$  and fij:  $f \ i = f \ j$ 
  show  $i = j$ 
  proof (cases rule: wo-rel.cases-Total3[OF 0], safe)
    assume  $(i, j) \in r$  and ijd:  $i \neq j$ 
    hence rij:  $(\text{succ } r \ i, j) \in r$  by (metis 0 wo-rel.succ-smallest)
    hence  $\text{As } (\text{succ } r \ i) \subseteq \text{As } j$  using rc unfolding relChain-def by auto
    thus  $i = j$  using ij ijd fij f by auto
  next
    assume  $(j, i) \in r$  and ijd:  $i \neq j$ 
    hence rij:  $(\text{succ } r \ j, i) \in r$  by (metis 0 wo-rel.succ-smallest)
    hence  $\text{As } (\text{succ } r \ j) \subseteq \text{As } i$  using rc unfolding relChain-def by auto
    thus  $j = i$  using ij ijd fij f by fastforce
  qed (insert ij, auto)
qed
moreover have  $f \text{ `` } (\text{Field } r) \subseteq B$  using f AsBs by auto
moreover have  $|B| < o \ |\text{Field } r|$  using Br cr by (metis card-of-unique ord-
Less-ordIso-trans)
ultimately show False unfolding card-of-ordLess[symmetric] by auto
qed

```

## 10.10 Regular vs. stable cardinals

lemma *stable-cardSuc*:

assumes *CARD*: *Card-order*  $r$  and *INF*:  $\neg \text{finite } (\text{Field } r)$

shows *stable*(*cardSuc*  $r$ )

**using** *infinite-cardSuc-regularCard regularCard-stable*  
**by** (*metis CARD INF cardSuc-Card-order cardSuc-finite*)

**lemma** *stable-ordIso*:  
**assumes**  $r =_o r'$   
**shows**  $\text{stable } r = \text{stable } r'$   
**by** (*metis assms ordIso-symmetric stable-ordIso1*)

**lemma** *stable-nat*:  $\text{stable } |\text{UNIV}::\text{nat set}|$   
**using** *stable-natLeq card-of-nat stable-ordIso* **by** *auto*

Below, the type of "A" is not important – we just had to choose an appropriate type to make "A" possible. What is important is that arbitrarily large infinite sets of stable cardinality exist.

**lemma** *infinite-stable-exists*:  
**assumes** *CARD*:  $\forall r \in R. \text{Card-order } (r::'a \text{ rel})$   
**shows**  $\exists (A :: (\text{nat} + 'a \text{ set}) \text{ set}).$   
 $\neg \text{finite } A \wedge \text{stable } |A| \wedge (\forall r \in R. r <_o |A|)$   
**proof** –  
**have**  $\exists (A :: (\text{nat} + 'a \text{ set}) \text{ set}).$   
 $\neg \text{finite } A \wedge \text{stable } |A| \wedge |\text{UNIV}::'a \text{ set}| <_o |A|$   
**proof**(*cases finite (UNIV::'a set)*)  
**case** *True*  
**let**  $?B = \text{UNIV}::\text{nat set}$   
**have**  $\neg \text{finite} (?B <+> \{\})$  **using** *finite-Plus-iff* **by** *blast*  
**moreover**  
**have**  $\text{stable } |?B|$  **using** *stable-natLeq card-of-nat stable-ordIso1* **by** *blast*  
**hence**  $\text{stable } |?B <+> \{\}|$  **using** *stable-ordIso card-of-Plus-empty1* **by** *blast*  
**moreover**  
**have**  $\neg \text{finite}(\text{Field } |?B|) \wedge \text{finite}(\text{Field } |\text{UNIV}::'a \text{ set}|)$  **using** *True* **by** *simp*  
**hence**  $|\text{UNIV}::'a \text{ set}| <_o |?B|$  **by** (*simp add: finite-ordLess-infinite*)  
**hence**  $|\text{UNIV}::'a \text{ set}| <_o |?B <+> \{\}|$  **using** *card-of-Plus-empty1 ordLess-ordIso-trans*  
**by** *blast*  
**ultimately show** *?thesis* **by** *blast*  
**next**  
**case** *False*  
**hence**  $\ast: \neg \text{finite}(\text{Field } |\text{UNIV}::'a \text{ set}|)$  **by** *simp*  
**let**  $?B = \text{Field}(\text{cardSuc } |\text{UNIV}::'a \text{ set}|)$   
**have**  $0: |?B| =_o |\{\}| <+> ?B$  **using** *card-of-Plus-empty2* **by** *blast*  
**have**  $1: \neg \text{finite } ?B$  **using** *False card-of-cardSuc-finite* **by** *blast*  
**hence**  $2: \neg \text{finite}(\{\} <+> ?B)$  **using** *0 card-of-ordIso-finite* **by** *blast*  
**have**  $|?B| =_o \text{cardSuc } |\text{UNIV}::'a \text{ set}|$   
**using** *card-of-Card-order cardSuc-Card-order card-of-Field-ordIso* **by** *blast*  
**moreover** **have**  $\text{stable}(\text{cardSuc } |\text{UNIV}::'a \text{ set}|)$   
**using** *stable-cardSuc \* card-of-Card-order* **by** *blast*  
**ultimately** **have**  $\text{stable } |?B|$  **using** *stable-ordIso* **by** *blast*  
**hence**  $3: \text{stable } |\{\} <+> ?B|$  **using** *stable-ordIso 0* **by** *blast*  
**have**  $|\text{UNIV}::'a \text{ set}| <_o \text{cardSuc } |\text{UNIV}::'a \text{ set}|$   
**using** *card-of-Card-order cardSuc-greater* **by** *blast*

**moreover have**  $|?B| =_o \text{cardSuc } |UNIV::'a \text{ set}|$   
**using** *card-of-Card-order cardSuc-Card-order card-of-Field-ordIso* **by** *blast*  
**ultimately have**  $|UNIV::'a \text{ set}| <_o |?B|$   
**using** *ordIso-symmetric ordLess-ordIso-trans* **by** *blast*  
**hence**  $|UNIV::'a \text{ set}| <_o |\{\}| <_{+> } ?B|$  **using** *0 ordLess-ordIso-trans* **by** *blast*  
**thus** *?thesis using 2 3 by blast*  
**qed**  
**thus** *?thesis using CARD card-of-UNIV2 ordLeq-ordLess-trans* **by** *blast*  
**qed**

**corollary** *infinite-regularCard-exists:*

**assumes** *CARD:  $\forall r \in R. \text{Card-order } (r::'a \text{ rel})$*   
**shows**  $\exists (A :: (\text{nat} + 'a \text{ set}) \text{ set}).$   
 $\neg \text{finite } A \wedge \text{regularCard } |A| \wedge (\forall r \in R. r <_o |A|)$   
**using** *infinite-stable-exists[OF CARD] stable-regularCard* **by** *(metis Field-card-of card-of-card-order-on)*

**end**

## 11 Cardinal Arithmetic

**theory** *Cardinal-Arithmetic*

**imports** *Cardinal-Order-Relation*

**begin**

### 11.1 Binary sum

**lemma** *csum-Cnotzero2:*

$Cnotzero \ r2 \implies Cnotzero \ (r1 +_c r2)$   
**unfolding** *csum-def*  
**by** *(metis Cnotzero-imp-not-empty Field-card-of Plus-eq-empty-conv card-of-card-order-on czeroE)*

**lemma** *single-cone:*

$|\{x\}| =_o \text{cone}$   
**proof**  $-$   
**let**  $?f = \lambda x. ()$   
**have** *bij-betw ?f {x} {()}* **unfolding** *bij-betw-def* **by** *auto*  
**thus** *?thesis unfolding cone-def using card-of-ordIso* **by** *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *cone-Cnotzero: Cnotzero cone*

**by** *(simp add: cone-not-czero Card-order-cone)*

**lemma** *cone-ordLeq-ctwo: cone  $\leq_o$  ctwo*

**unfolding** *cone-def ctwo-def card-of-ordLeq[symmetric]* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *csum-czero1: Card-order  $r \implies r +_c \text{czero} =_o r$*

**unfolding** *czero-def csum-def Field-card-of*

**by** (rule ordIso-transitive[OF ordIso-symmetric[OF card-of-Plus-empty1] card-of-Field-ordIso])

**lemma** csum-czero2: Card-order  $r \implies \text{czero} +_c r =_o r$

**unfolding** czero-def csum-def Field-card-of

**by** (rule ordIso-transitive[OF ordIso-symmetric[OF card-of-Plus-empty2] card-of-Field-ordIso])

## 11.2 Product

**lemma** Times-cprod:  $|A \times B| =_o |A| *_c |B|$

**by** (simp only: cprod-def Field-card-of card-of-refl)

**lemma** card-of-Times-singleton:

**fixes**  $A :: 'a \text{ set}$

**shows**  $|A \times \{x\}| =_o |A|$

**proof** –

**define**  $f :: 'a \times 'b \Rightarrow 'a$  **where**  $f = (\lambda(a, b). a)$

**have**  $A \subseteq f^{-1}(A \times \{x\})$  **unfolding** f-def **by** (auto simp: image-iff)

**hence**  $\text{bij\_betw } f (A \times \{x\}) A$  **unfolding** bij-betw-def inj-on-def f-def **by** fastforce

**thus** ?thesis **using** card-of-ordIso **by** blast

**qed**

**lemma** cprod-assoc:  $(r *_c s) *_c t =_o r *_c s *_c t$

**unfolding** cprod-def Field-card-of **by** (rule card-of-Times-assoc)

**lemma** cprod-czero:  $r *_c \text{czero} =_o \text{czero}$

**unfolding** cprod-def czero-def Field-card-of **by** (simp add: card-of-empty-ordIso)

**lemma** cprod-cone: Card-order  $r \implies r *_c \text{cone} =_o r$

**unfolding** cprod-def cone-def Field-card-of

**by** (metis (no-types) card-of-Field-ordIso card-of-Times-singleton ordIso-transitive)

**lemma** ordLeq-cprod1:  $\llbracket \text{Card-order } p1; \text{Cnotzero } p2 \rrbracket \implies p1 \leq_o p1 *_c p2$

**unfolding** cprod-def **by** (metis Card-order-Times1 czeroI)

## 11.3 Exponentiation

**lemma** cexp-czero:  $r \hat{^}_c \text{czero} =_o \text{cone}$

**unfolding** cexp-def czero-def Field-card-of Func-empty **by** (rule single-cone)

**lemma** Pow-cexp-ctwo:

$|Pow A| =_o \text{ctwo} \hat{^}_c |A|$

**by** (simp add: card-of-Pow-Func cexp-def ctwo-def)

**lemma** Cnotzero-cexp:

**assumes** Cnotzero  $q$

**shows** Cnotzero  $(q \hat{^}_c r)$

**proof** –

**have** Field  $q \neq \{\}$

**by** (metis Card-order-iff-ordIso-card-of assms(1) czero-def)

**then show** ?thesis

by (simp add: card-of-ordIso-czero-iff-empty cexp-def)  
qed

**lemma** *Cinfinite-ctwo-cexp*:  
 $Cinfinite\ r \implies Cinfinite\ (ctwo \hat{c}\ r)$   
**unfolding** *ctwo-def cexp-def cinfinite-def Field-card-of*  
**by** (rule conjI, rule infinite-Func, auto)

**lemma** *cone-ordLeq-iff-Field*:  
**assumes**  $cone \leq_o r$   
**shows**  $Field\ r \neq \{\}$   
**by** (metis assms card-of-empty3 card-of-mono2 cone-Cnotzero czeroI)

**lemma** *cone-ordLeq-cexp*:  $cone \leq_o r1 \implies cone \leq_o r1 \hat{c}\ r2$   
**by** (simp add: cexp-def cone-def Func-non-emp cone-ordLeq-iff-Field)

**lemma** *Card-order-czero*:  $Card\text{-}order\ czero$   
**by** (simp only: card-of-Card-order czero-def)

**lemma** *cexp-mono2''*:  
**assumes**  $p2 \leq_o r2$   
**and**  $n1: Cnotzero\ q$   
**and**  $n2: Card\text{-}order\ p2$   
**shows**  $q \hat{c}\ p2 \leq_o q \hat{c}\ r2$   
**proof** (cases  $p2 =_o (czero :: 'a\ rel)$ )  
**case** *True*  
**hence**  $q \hat{c}\ p2 =_o q \hat{c}\ (czero :: 'a\ rel)$  **using**  $n1\ n2\ cexp\text{-}cong2\ Card\text{-}order\text{-}czero$   
**by** *blast*  
**also have**  $q \hat{c}\ (czero :: 'a\ rel) =_o cone$  **using** *cexp-czero* **by** *blast*  
**also have**  $cone \leq_o q \hat{c}\ r2$  **using** *cone-ordLeq-cexp cone-ordLeq-Cnotzero n1* **by** *blast*  
**finally show** *?thesis* .  
**next**  
**case** *False* **thus** *?thesis* **using** *assms cexp-mono2' czeroI* **by** *metis*  
**qed**

**lemma** *csum-cexp*:  $\llbracket Cinfinite\ r1; Cinfinite\ r2; Card\text{-}order\ q; ctwo \leq_o q \rrbracket \implies$   
 $q \hat{c}\ r1 +_c q \hat{c}\ r2 \leq_o q \hat{c}\ (r1 +_c r2)$   
**apply** (rule *csum-cinfinite-bound*)  
**apply** (metis *cexp-mono2' cinfinite-def finite.emptyI ordLeq-csum1*)  
**apply** (metis *cexp-mono2' cinfinite-def finite.emptyI ordLeq-csum2*)  
**by** (simp-all add: *Card-order-cexp Cinfinite-csum1 Cinfinite-cexp cinfinite-cexp*)

**lemma** *csum-cexp'*:  $\llbracket Cinfinite\ r; Card\text{-}order\ q; ctwo \leq_o q \rrbracket \implies q +_c r \leq_o q \hat{c}\ r$   
**apply** (rule *csum-cinfinite-bound*)  
**apply** (metis *Cinfinite-Cnotzero ordLeq-cexp1*)  
**apply** (metis *ordLeq-cexp2*)  
**apply** *blast+*  
**by** (metis *Cinfinite-cexp*)



**lemma** *card-of-Sigma-ordLeq-Cinfinite*:

$\llbracket \text{Cinfinite } r; |I| \leq_o r; \forall i \in I. |A \ i| \leq_o r \rrbracket \implies |\text{SIGMA } i : I. A \ i| \leq_o r$

**unfolding** *cinfinite-def* **by** (*blast intro: card-of-Sigma-ordLeq-infinite-Field*)

**lemma** *Cinfinite-ordLess-cexp*:

**assumes** *r: Cinfinite r*

**shows**  $r <_o r \hat{^c} r$

**proof** –

**have**  $r <_o \text{ctwo} \hat{^c} r$  **using** *r* **by** (*simp only: ordLess-ctwo-cexp*)

**also have**  $\text{ctwo} \hat{^c} r \leq_o r \hat{^c} r$

**by** (*rule cexp-mono1[OF ctwo-ordLeq-Cinfinite]*) (*auto simp: r ctwo-not-czero Card-order-ctwo*)

**finally show** *?thesis* .

**qed**

**lemma** *infinite-ordLeq-cexp*:

**assumes** *Cinfinite r*

**shows**  $r \leq_o r \hat{^c} r$

**by** (*rule ordLess-imp-ordLeq[OF Cinfinite-ordLess-cexp[OF assms]]*)

**lemma** *czero-cexp*:  $\text{Cnotzero } r \implies \text{czero} \hat{^c} r =_o \text{czero}$

**by** (*metis Cnotzero-imp-not-empty cexp-def czero-def card-of-empty-ordIso Field-card-of Func-is-emp*)

**lemma** *Func-singleton*:

**fixes** *x :: 'b* **and** *A :: 'a set*

**shows**  $|\text{Func } A \ \{x\}| =_o |\{x\}|$

**proof** (*rule ordIso-symmetric*)

**define** *f* **where** [*abs-def*]:  $f \ y \ a = (\text{if } y = x \wedge a \in A \text{ then } x \text{ else undefined})$  **for** *y a*

**have**  $\text{Func } A \ \{x\} \subseteq f \ ' \ \{x\}$  **unfolding** *f-def* *Func-def* **by** (*force simp: fun-eq-iff*)

**hence** *bij-betw* *f*  $\{x\}$  (*Func A {x}*)

**unfolding** *bij-betw-def inj-on-def f-def Func-def* **by** (*auto split: if-split-asm*)

**thus**  $|\{x\}| =_o |\text{Func } A \ \{x\}|$  **using** *card-of-ordIso* **by** *blast*

**qed**

**lemma** *cone-cexp*:  $\text{cone} \hat{^c} r =_o \text{cone}$

**unfolding** *cexp-def cone-def Field-card-of* **by** (*rule Func-singleton*)

**lemma** *card-of-Func-squared*:

**fixes** *A :: 'a set*

**shows**  $|\text{Func } (\text{UNIV} :: \text{bool set}) \ A| =_o |A \times A|$

**proof** (*rule ordIso-symmetric*)

**define** *f* **where**  $f = (\lambda(x::'a,y) \ b. \text{if } A = \{\} \text{ then undefined else if } b \text{ then } x \text{ else } y)$

**have**  $\text{Func } (\text{UNIV} :: \text{bool set}) \ A \subseteq f \ ' \ (A \times A)$  **unfolding** *f-def* *Func-def*

**by** (*auto simp: image-iff fun-eq-iff split: option.splits if-split-asm*) *blast*

**hence** *bij-betw* *f*  $(A \times A)$  (*Func (UNIV :: bool set) A*)

**unfolding** *bij-betw-def inj-on-def f-def Func-def* **by** (*auto simp: fun-eq-iff*)  
**thus**  $|A \times A| =_o |Func (UNIV :: \text{bool set}) A|$  **using** *card-of-ordIso* **by** *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *cexp-ctwo*:  $r \hat{=}^c \text{ctwo} =_o r * c r$   
**unfolding** *cexp-def ctwo-def cprod-def Field-card-of* **by** (*rule card-of-Func-squared*)

**lemma** *card-of-Func-Plus*:

**fixes**  $A :: 'a \text{ set}$  **and**  $B :: 'b \text{ set}$  **and**  $C :: 'c \text{ set}$   
**shows**  $|Func (A <+> B) C| =_o |Func A C \times Func B C|$   
**proof** (*rule ordIso-symmetric*)  
**define**  $f$  **where**  $f = (\lambda(g :: 'a \Rightarrow 'c, h :: 'b \Rightarrow 'c) \text{ ab. case ab of } Inl\ a \Rightarrow g\ a \mid Inr\ b \Rightarrow h\ b)$   
**define**  $f'$  **where**  $f' = (\lambda(f :: ('a + 'b) \Rightarrow 'c). (\lambda a. f\ (Inl\ a), \lambda b. f\ (Inr\ b)))$   
**have**  $f' \text{ ' } (Func\ A\ C \times Func\ B\ C) \subseteq Func\ (A <+> B)\ C$   
**unfolding** *Func-def f-def* **by** (*force split: sum.splits*)  
**moreover** **have**  $f' \text{ ' } Func\ (A <+> B)\ C \subseteq Func\ A\ C \times Func\ B\ C$  **unfolding** *Func-def f'-def* **by** *force*  
**moreover** **have**  $\forall a \in Func\ A\ C \times Func\ B\ C. f'\ (f\ a) = a$  **unfolding** *f'-def f-def Func-def* **by** *auto*  
**moreover** **have**  $\forall a' \in Func\ (A <+> B)\ C. f\ (f'\ a') = a'$  **unfolding** *f'-def f-def Func-def*  
**by** (*auto split: sum.splits*)  
**ultimately** **have** *bij-betw*  $f\ (Func\ A\ C \times Func\ B\ C)\ (Func\ (A <+> B)\ C)$   
**by** (*intro bij-betw-byWitness[of - f' f]*)  
**thus**  $|Func\ A\ C \times Func\ B\ C| =_o |Func\ (A <+> B)\ C|$  **using** *card-of-ordIso*  
**by** *blast*  
**qed**

**lemma** *cexp-csum*:  $r \hat{=}^c (s + c\ t) =_o r \hat{=}^c s * c r \hat{=}^c t$   
**unfolding** *cexp-def cprod-def csum-def Field-card-of* **by** (*rule card-of-Func-Plus*)

## 11.4 Powerset

**definition** *cpow* **where**  $cpow\ r = |Pow\ (Field\ r)|$

**lemma** *card-order-cpow*:  $card\text{-}order\ r \Longrightarrow card\text{-}order\ (cpow\ r)$   
**by** (*simp only: cpow-def Field-card-order Pow-UNIV card-of-card-order-on*)

**lemma** *cpow-greater-eq*:  $Card\text{-}order\ r \Longrightarrow r \leq_o cpow\ r$   
**by** (*rule ordLess-imp-ordLeq*) (*simp only: cpow-def Card-order-Pow*)

**lemma** *Cinfinite-cpow*:  $Cinfinite\ r \Longrightarrow Cinfinite\ (cpow\ r)$   
**unfolding** *cpow-def cinfinite-def* **by** *simp*

**lemma** *Card-order-cpow*:  $Card\text{-}order\ (cpow\ r)$   
**unfolding** *cpow-def* **by** (*rule card-of-Card-order*)

**lemma** *cardSuc-ordLeq-cpow*:  $Card\text{-}order\ r \Longrightarrow cardSuc\ r \leq_o cpow\ r$

**unfolding** *cpow-def* **by** (*metis Card-order-Pow cardSuc-ordLess-ordLeq card-of-Card-order*)

**lemma** *cpow-cexp-ctwo*:  $cpow\ r =_o\ ctwo \hat{\ }_c\ r$

**unfolding** *cpow-def ctwo-def cexp-def Field-card-of* **by** (*rule card-of-Pow-Func*)

## 11.5 Inverse image

**lemma** *vimage-ordLeq*:

**assumes**  $|A| \leq_o k$  **and**  $\forall a \in A. |vimage\ f\ \{a\}| \leq_o k$  **and** *Cinfinite* *k*

**shows**  $|vimage\ f\ A| \leq_o k$

**proof**–

**have**  $vimage\ f\ A = (\bigcup a \in A. vimage\ f\ \{a\})$  **by** *auto*

**also have**  $|\bigcup a \in A. vimage\ f\ \{a\}| \leq_o k$

**using** *UNION-Cinfinite-bound[OF assms]* .

**finally show** *?thesis* .

**qed**

## 11.6 Maximum

**definition** *cmax* **where**

*cmax* *r s* =

(if *cinfinite* *r*  $\vee$  *cinfinite* *s* then *czero* +*c* *r* +*c* *s*

else *natLeq-on* (*max* (*card* (*Field* *r*)) (*card* (*Field* *s*))) +*c* *czero*)

**lemma** *cmax-com*:  $cmax\ r\ s =_o\ cmax\ s\ r$

**unfolding** *cmax-def*

**by** (*auto simp: max.commute intro: csum-cong2[OF csum-com] csum-cong2[OF czero-ordIso]*)

**lemma** *cmax1*:

**assumes** *Card-order* *r Card-order* *s s*  $\leq_o\ r$

**shows**  $cmax\ r\ s =_o\ r$

**unfolding** *cmax-def*

**proof** (*split if-splits, intro conjI impI*)

**assume** *cinfinite* *r*  $\vee$  *cinfinite* *s*

**hence** *Cinf*: *Cinfinite* *r* **using** *assms*(1,3) **by** (*metis cinfinite-mono*)

**have**  $czero + c\ r + c\ s =_o\ r + c\ s$  **by** (*rule csum-czero2[OF Card-order-csum]*)

**also have**  $r + c\ s =_o\ r$  **by** (*rule csum-absorb1[OF Cinf assms(3)]*)

**finally show**  $czero + c\ r + c\ s =_o\ r$  .

**next**

**assume**  $\neg (cinfinite\ r \vee cinfinite\ s)$

**hence** *fin*: *finite* (*Field* *r*) **and** *finite* (*Field* *s*) **unfolding** *cinfinite-def* **by** *simp-all*

**moreover**

{ **from** *assms*(2) **have**  $|Field\ s| =_o\ s$  **by** (*rule card-of-Field-ordIso*)

**also from** *assms*(3) **have**  $s \leq_o\ r$  .

**also from** *assms*(1) **have**  $r =_o\ |Field\ r|$  **by** (*rule ordIso-symmetric[OF card-of-Field-ordIso]*)

**finally have**  $|Field\ s| \leq_o\ |Field\ r|$  .

}

**ultimately have**  $card\ (Field\ s) \leq card\ (Field\ r)$  **by** (*subst sym[OF finite-card-of-iff-card2]*)

**hence**  $max\ (card\ (Field\ r))\ (card\ (Field\ s)) = card\ (Field\ r)$  **by** (*rule max-absorb1*)

hence  $\text{natLeq-on } (\max (\text{card } (\text{Field } r)) (\text{card } (\text{Field } s))) + c \text{ czero} =$   
 $\text{natLeq-on } (\text{card } (\text{Field } r)) + c \text{ czero}$  **by** *simp*  
 also have  $\dots = o \text{ natLeq-on } (\text{card } (\text{Field } r))$  **by** (*rule csum-czero1 [OF natLeq-on-Card-order]*)  
 also have  $\text{natLeq-on } (\text{card } (\text{Field } r)) = o |\text{Field } r|$   
**by** (*rule ordIso-symmetric [OF finite-imp-card-of-natLeq-on [OF fin]]*)  
 also from *assms(1)* have  $|\text{Field } r| = o r$  **by** (*rule card-of-Field-ordIso*)  
 finally show  $\text{natLeq-on } (\max (\text{card } (\text{Field } r)) (\text{card } (\text{Field } s))) + c \text{ czero} = o r$  .  
**qed**

**lemma** *cmax2*:  
 assumes *Card-order r Card-order s*  $r \leq o s$   
 shows  $\text{cmax } r s = o s$   
**by** (*metis assms cmax1 cmax-com ordIso-transitive*)

**context**  
 fixes *r s*  
 assumes *r: Cinfinites r*  
 and *s: Cinfinites s*  
**begin**

**lemma** *cmax-csum*:  $\text{cmax } r s = o r + c s$   
**by** (*simp add: Card-order-csum cmax-def csum-czero2 r*)

**lemma** *cmax-cprod*:  $\text{cmax } r s = o r * c s$   
**proof** (*cases r ≤ o s*)  
 case *True*  
 hence  $\text{cmax } r s = o s$  **by** (*metis cmax2 r s*)  
 also have  $s = o r * c s$  **by** (*metis Cinfinites-Cnotzero True cprod-infinite2' ordIso-symmetric r s*)  
 finally show *?thesis* .  
 next  
 case *False*  
 hence  $s \leq o r$  **by** (*metis ordLeq-total r s card-order-on-def*)  
 hence  $\text{cmax } r s = o r$  **by** (*metis cmax1 r s*)  
 also have  $r = o r * c s$  **by** (*metis Cinfinites-Cnotzero ⟨s ≤ o r⟩ cprod-infinite1' ordIso-symmetric r s*)  
 finally show *?thesis* .  
**qed**

**end**

**lemma** *Card-order-cmax*:  
 assumes *r: Card-order r* and *s: Card-order s*  
 shows *Card-order (cmax r s)*  
 unfolding *cmax-def* **by** (*auto simp: Card-order-csum*)

**lemma** *ordLeq-cmax*:  
 assumes *r: Card-order r* and *s: Card-order s*  
 shows  $r \leq o \text{cmax } r s \wedge s \leq o \text{cmax } r s$

**by** (*meson card-order-on-def cmax1 cmax2 ordIso-iff-ordLeq ordLeq-total ordLeq-transitive*  
*r s*)

**lemmas** *ordLeq-cmax1 = ordLeq-cmax[THEN conjunct1]* **and**  
*ordLeq-cmax2 = ordLeq-cmax[THEN conjunct2]*

**lemma** *finite-cmax:*

**assumes** *r: Card-order r and s: Card-order s*

**shows** *finite (Field (cmax r s))  $\longleftrightarrow$  finite (Field r)  $\wedge$  finite (Field s)*

**by** (*meson card-order-on-def cmax1 cmax2 ordIso-finite-Field ordLeq-finite-Field*  
*ordLeq-total r s*)

**end**

## 12 Extending Well-founded Relations to Wellorders

**theory** *Wellorder-Extension*

**imports** *Main Order-Union*

**begin**

### 12.1 Extending Well-founded Relations to Wellorders

A *downset* (also lower set, decreasing set, initial segment, or downward closed set) is closed w.r.t. smaller elements.

**definition** *downset-on* **where**

*downset-on A r = ( $\forall x y. (x, y) \in r \wedge y \in A \longrightarrow x \in A$ )*

**lemma** *downset-onI:*

*( $\bigwedge x y. (x, y) \in r \implies y \in A \implies x \in A$ )  $\implies$  downset-on A r*

**by** (*auto simp: downset-on-def*)

**lemma** *downset-onD:*

*downset-on A r  $\implies (x, y) \in r \implies y \in A \implies x \in A$*

**unfolding** *downset-on-def* **by** *blast*

Extensions of relations w.r.t. a given set.

**definition** *extension-on* **where**

*extension-on A r s = ( $\forall x \in A. \forall y \in A. (x, y) \in s \longrightarrow (x, y) \in r$ )*

**lemma** *extension-onI:*

*( $\bigwedge x y. \llbracket x \in A; y \in A; (x, y) \in s \rrbracket \implies (x, y) \in r$ )  $\implies$  extension-on A r s*

**by** (*auto simp: extension-on-def*)

**lemma** *extension-onD:*

*extension-on A r s  $\implies x \in A \implies y \in A \implies (x, y) \in s \implies (x, y) \in r$*

**by** (*auto simp: extension-on-def*)

**lemma** *downset-on-Union*:

**assumes**  $\bigwedge r. r \in R \implies \text{downset-on } (\text{Field } r) \ p$   
**shows**  $\text{downset-on } (\text{Field } (\bigcup R)) \ p$   
**using** *assms* **by** (*auto intro: downset-onI dest: downset-onD*)

**lemma** *chain-subset-extension-on-Union*:

**assumes**  $\text{chain}_{\subseteq} R$  **and**  $\bigwedge r. r \in R \implies \text{extension-on } (\text{Field } r) \ r \ p$   
**shows**  $\text{extension-on } (\text{Field } (\bigcup R)) (\bigcup R) \ p$   
**using** *assms*  
**by** (*simp add: chain-subset-def extension-on-def*)  
(*metis (no-types) mono-Field subsetD*)

**lemma** *downset-on-empty [simp]*:  $\text{downset-on } \{\} \ p$

**by** (*auto simp: downset-on-def*)

**lemma** *extension-on-empty [simp]*:  $\text{extension-on } \{\} \ p \ q$

**by** (*auto simp: extension-on-def*)

Every well-founded relation can be extended to a wellorder.

**theorem** *well-order-extension*:

**assumes** *wf* *p*  
**shows**  $\exists w. p \subseteq w \wedge \text{Well-order } w$

**proof** –

**let**  $?K = \{r. \text{Well-order } r \wedge \text{downset-on } (\text{Field } r) \ p \wedge \text{extension-on } (\text{Field } r) \ r \ p\}$

**define** *I* **where**  $I = \text{init-seg-of} \cap ?K \times ?K$

**have** *I-init*:  $I \subseteq \text{init-seg-of}$  **by** (*simp add: I-def*)

**then have** *subch*:  $\bigwedge R. R \in \text{Chains } I \implies \text{chain}_{\subseteq} R$

**by** (*auto simp: init-seg-of-def chain-subset-def Chains-def*)

**have** *Chains-wo*:  $\bigwedge R \ r. R \in \text{Chains } I \implies r \in R \implies$

$\text{Well-order } r \wedge \text{downset-on } (\text{Field } r) \ p \wedge \text{extension-on } (\text{Field } r) \ r \ p$

**by** (*simp add: Chains-def I-def*) *blast*

**have** *FI*:  $\text{Field } I = ?K$  **by** (*auto simp: I-def init-seg-of-def Field-def*)

**then have** *O*: *Partial-order* *I*

**by** (*auto simp: partial-order-on-def preorder-on-def antisym-def antisym-init-seg-of refl-on-def*)

*trans-def I-def elim: trans-init-seg-of*)

**have**  $\bigcup R \in ?K \wedge (\forall r \in R. (r, \bigcup R) \in I)$  **if**  $R \in \text{Chains } I$  **for** *R*

**proof** –

**from** *that* **have** *Ris*:  $R \in \text{Chains init-seg-of}$  **using** *mono-Chains [OF I-init]*

**by** *blast*

**have** *subch*:  $\text{chain}_{\subseteq} R$  **using**  $\langle R \in \text{Chains } I \rangle$  *I-init*

**by** (*auto simp: init-seg-of-def chain-subset-def Chains-def*)

**have**  $\forall r \in R. \text{Refl } r$  **and**  $\forall r \in R. \text{trans } r$  **and**  $\forall r \in R. \text{antisym } r$  **and**

$\forall r \in R. \text{Total } r$  **and**  $\forall r \in R. \text{wf } (r - \text{Id})$  **and**

$\bigwedge r. r \in R \implies \text{downset-on } (\text{Field } r) \ p$  **and**

$\bigwedge r. r \in R \implies \text{extension-on } (\text{Field } r) \ r \ p$

**using** *Chains-wo [OF \langle R \in \text{Chains } I \rangle]* **by** (*simp-all add: order-on-defs*)

**have**  $(\bigcup R) \subseteq \text{Field } (\bigcup R) \times \text{Field } (\bigcup R)$   
**using** *Restr-Field* **by** *blast*  
**moreover have**  $\text{Refl } (\bigcup R)$  **using**  $\langle \forall r \in R. \text{Refl } r \rangle$  **unfolding** *refl-on-def* **by**  
*fastforce*  
**moreover have**  $\text{trans } (\bigcup R)$   
**by** (*rule chain-subset-trans-Union* [*OF subch*  $\langle \forall r \in R. \text{trans } r \rangle$ ])  
**moreover have**  $\text{antisym } (\bigcup R)$   
**by** (*rule chain-subset-antisym-Union* [*OF subch*  $\langle \forall r \in R. \text{antisym } r \rangle$ ])  
**moreover have**  $\text{Total } (\bigcup R)$   
**by** (*rule chain-subset-Total-Union* [*OF subch*  $\langle \forall r \in R. \text{Total } r \rangle$ ])  
**moreover have**  $\text{wf } ((\bigcup R) - \text{Id})$   
**proof** –  
**have**  $(\bigcup R) - \text{Id} = \bigcup \{r - \text{Id} \mid r. r \in R\}$  **by** *blast*  
**with**  $\langle \forall r \in R. \text{wf } (r - \text{Id}) \rangle$  *wf-Union-wf-init-segs* [*OF Chains-inits-DiffI* [*OF*  
*Ris*]]  
**show** *?thesis* **by** *fastforce*  
**qed**  
**ultimately have** *Well-order*  $(\bigcup R)$  **by** (*simp add: order-on-defs*)  
**moreover have**  $\forall r \in R. r \text{ initial-segment-of } \bigcup R$  **using** *Ris*  
**by** (*simp add: Chains-init-seg-of-Union*)  
**moreover have**  $\text{downset-on } (\text{Field } (\bigcup R)) \ p$   
**by** (*rule downset-on-Union* [*OF*  $\langle \bigwedge r. r \in R \implies \text{downset-on } (\text{Field } r) \ p \rangle$ ])  
**moreover have**  $\text{extension-on } (\text{Field } (\bigcup R)) (\bigcup R) \ p$   
**by** (*rule chain-subset-extension-on-Union* [*OF subch*  $\langle \bigwedge r. r \in R \implies \text{exten-}$   
*sion-on } (\text{Field } r) \ r \ p \rangle])  
**ultimately show** *?thesis*  
**using** *mono-Chains* [*OF I-init*] **and**  $\langle R \in \text{Chains } I \rangle$   
**by** (*simp (no-asm) add: I-def del: Field-Union*) (*metis Chains-wo*)  
**qed**  
**then have**  $1: \exists u \in \text{Field } I. \forall r \in R. (r, u) \in I$  **if**  $R \in \text{Chains } I$  **for**  $R$   
**using** *that* **by** (*subst FI*) *blast**

Zorn's Lemma yields a maximal wellorder  $m$ .

**from** *Zorns-po-lemma* [*OF 0 1*] **obtain**  $m :: ('a \times 'a) \text{ set}$   
**where** *Well-order*  $m$  **and**  $\text{downset-on } (\text{Field } m) \ p$  **and**  $\text{extension-on } (\text{Field } m)$   
 $m \ p$  **and**  
 $\text{max: } \forall r. \text{Well-order } r \wedge \text{downset-on } (\text{Field } r) \ p \wedge \text{extension-on } (\text{Field } r) \ r \ p \wedge$   
 $(m, r) \in I \longrightarrow r = m$   
**by** (*auto simp: FI*)  
**have**  $\text{Field } p \subseteq \text{Field } m$   
**proof** (*rule ccontr*)  
**let**  $?Q = \text{Field } p - \text{Field } m$   
**assume**  $\neg (\text{Field } p \subseteq \text{Field } m)$   
**with** *assms* [*unfolded wf-eq-minimal, THEN spec, of ?Q*]  
**obtain**  $x$  **where**  $x \in \text{Field } p$  **and**  $x \notin \text{Field } m$  **and**  
 $\text{min: } \forall y. (y, x) \in p \longrightarrow y \notin ?Q$  **by** *blast*

Add  $x$  as topmost element to  $m$ .

**let**  $?s = \{(y, x) \mid y. y \in \text{Field } m\}$

```

let ?m = insert (x, x) m ∪ ?s
have Fm: Field ?m = insert x (Field m) by (auto simp: Field-def)
have Refl m and trans m and antisym m and Total m and wf (m - Id) and
  m ⊆ Field m × Field m
  using ⟨Well-order m⟩ by (simp-all add: order-on-defs)

```

We show that the extension is a wellorder.

```

have ?m ⊆ Field ?m × Field ?m
  using ⟨m ⊆ Field m × Field m⟩ by auto
moreover have Refl ?m using ⟨Refl m⟩ Fm by (auto simp: refl-on-def)
moreover have trans ?m using ⟨trans m⟩ ⟨x ∉ Field m⟩
  unfolding trans-def Field-def Domain-unfold Domain-converse [symmetric]
by blast
moreover have antisym ?m using ⟨antisym m⟩ ⟨x ∉ Field m⟩
  unfolding antisym-def Field-def Domain-unfold Domain-converse [symmetric]
by blast
moreover have Total ?m using ⟨Total m⟩ Fm by (auto simp: Relation.total-on-def)
moreover have wf (?m - Id)
proof -
  have wf ?s using ⟨x ∉ Field m⟩
    by (simp add: wf-eq-minimal Field-def Domain-unfold Domain-converse
[symmetric]) metis
  thus ?thesis using ⟨wf (m - Id)⟩ ⟨x ∉ Field m⟩
    wf-subset [OF ⟨wf ?s⟩ Diff-subset]
    by (fastforce intro!: wf-Un simp add: Un-Diff Field-def)
qed
ultimately have Well-order ?m by (simp add: order-on-defs)
moreover have extension-on (Field ?m) ?m p
  using ⟨extension-on (Field m) m p⟩ ⟨downset-on (Field m) p⟩
  by (subst Fm) (auto simp: extension-on-def dest: downset-onD)
moreover have downset-on (Field ?m) p
  apply (subst Fm)
  using ⟨downset-on (Field m) p⟩ and min
  unfolding downset-on-def Field-def by blast
moreover have (m, ?m) ∈ I
  using ⟨Well-order m⟩ and ⟨Well-order ?m⟩ and
  ⟨downset-on (Field m) p⟩ and ⟨downset-on (Field ?m) p⟩ and
  ⟨extension-on (Field m) m p⟩ and ⟨extension-on (Field ?m) ?m p⟩ and
  ⟨Refl m⟩ and ⟨x ∉ Field m⟩
  by (auto simp: I-def init-seg-of-def refl-on-def dest: well-order-on-domain)
ultimately
— This contradicts maximality of m:
show False using max and ⟨x ∉ Field m⟩ unfolding Field-def by blast
qed
have p ⊆ m
  using ⟨Field p ⊆ Field m⟩ and ⟨extension-on (Field m) m p⟩
  unfolding Field-def extension-on-def by auto fast
with ⟨Well-order m⟩ show ?thesis by blast
qed

```



Every well-founded relation can be extended to a total wellorder.

**corollary** *total-well-order-extension:*

```

  assumes wf p
  shows  $\exists w. p \subseteq w \wedge \text{Well-order } w \wedge \text{Field } w = \text{UNIV}$ 
proof –
  from well-order-extension [OF assms] obtain w
    where  $p \subseteq w$  and wo: Well-order w by blast
  let ?A = UNIV – Field w
  from well-order-on [of ?A] obtain w' where wo': well-order-on ?A w' ..
  have [simp]: Field w' = ?A using well-order-on-Well-order [OF wo'] by simp
  have *: Field w  $\cap$  Field w' = {} by simp
  let ?w = w  $\cup$  w'
  have  $p \subseteq ?w$  using  $\langle p \subseteq w \rangle$  by (auto simp: Osum-def)
  moreover have Well-order ?w using Osum-Well-order [OF * wo] and wo' by
simp
  moreover have Field ?w = UNIV by (simp add: Field-Osum)
  ultimately show ?thesis by blast
qed

```

**corollary** *well-order-on-extension:*

```

  assumes wf p and Field p  $\subseteq$  A
  shows  $\exists w. p \subseteq w \wedge \text{well-order-on } A \ w$ 
proof –
  from total-well-order-extension [OF  $\langle \text{wf } p \rangle$ ] obtain r
    where  $p \subseteq r$  and wo: Well-order r and univ: Field r = UNIV by blast
  let ?r =  $\{(x, y). x \in A \wedge y \in A \wedge (x, y) \in r\}$ 
  from  $\langle p \subseteq r \rangle$  have  $p \subseteq ?r$  using  $\langle \text{Field } p \subseteq A \rangle$  by (auto simp: Field-def)
  have Refl r trans r antisym r Total r wf (r – Id)
    using  $\langle \text{Well-order } r \rangle$  by (simp-all add: order-on-defs)
  have  $?r \subseteq A \times A$  by blast
  moreover have refl-on A ?r using  $\langle \text{Refl } r \rangle$  by (auto simp: refl-on-def univ)
  moreover have trans ?r using  $\langle \text{trans } r \rangle$ 
    unfolding trans-def by blast
  moreover have antisym ?r using  $\langle \text{antisym } r \rangle$ 
    unfolding antisym-def by blast
  moreover have total-on A ?r using  $\langle \text{Total } r \rangle$  by (simp add: total-on-def univ)
  moreover have wf (?r – Id) by (rule wf-subset [OF  $\langle \text{wf } (r – \text{Id}) \rangle$ ]) blast
  ultimately have well-order-on A ?r by (simp add: order-on-defs)
  with  $\langle p \subseteq ?r \rangle$  show ?thesis by blast
qed
end

```

## 13 Theory of Ordinals and Cardinals

**theory** *Cardinals*

**imports** *Ordinal-Arithmetic Cardinal-Arithmetic Wellorder-Extension*

**begin**

end

## 14 Sets Strictly Bounded by an Infinite Cardinal

**theory** *Bounded-Set*  
**imports** *Cardinals*  
**begin**

**typedef** (*'a*, *'k*) *bset* ( $\langle \cdot \text{ set}[\cdot] \rangle$  [22, 21] 21) =  
 {*A* :: *'a* *set*.  $|A| <_o \text{ natLeq } +c \mid \text{UNIV} :: \text{'k set}$  |}  
**morphisms** *set-bset* *Abs-bset*  
**by** (*rule* *exI*[*of* - { }]) (*auto simp: card-of-empty4 csum-def*)

**setup-lifting** *type-definition-bset*

**lift-definition** *map-bset* ::  
 (*'a*  $\Rightarrow$  *'b*)  $\Rightarrow$  *'a* *set*[*'k*]  $\Rightarrow$  *'b* *set*[*'k*] **is** *image*  
**using** *card-of-image ordLeq-ordLess-trans* **by** *blast*

**lift-definition** *rel-bset* ::  
 (*'a*  $\Rightarrow$  *'b*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool*)  $\Rightarrow$  *'a* *set*[*'k*]  $\Rightarrow$  *'b* *set*[*'k*]  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **is** *rel-set*  
 .

**lift-definition** *bempty* :: *'a* *set*[*'k*] **is** { }  
**by** (*auto simp: card-of-empty4 csum-def*)

**lift-definition** *binsert* :: *'a*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a* *set*[*'k*]  $\Rightarrow$  *'a* *set*[*'k*] **is** *insert*  
**using** *infinite-card-of-insert ordIso-ordLess-trans Field-card-of Field-natLeq UNIV-Plus-UNIV*  
*csum-def finite-Plus-UNIV-iff finite-insert finite-ordLess-infinite2 infinite-UNIV-nat*  
**by** *metis*

**definition** *bsingleton* **where**  
*bsingleton* *x* = *binsert* *x* *bempty*

**lemma** *set-bset-to-set-bset*:  $|A| <_o \text{ natLeq } +c \mid \text{UNIV} :: \text{'k set}$   $\Longrightarrow$   
*set-bset* (*the-inv* *set-bset* *A* :: *'a* *set*[*'k*]) = *A*  
**apply** (*rule* *f-the-inv-into-f*[*unfolded inj-on-def*])  
**apply** (*simp add: set-bset-inject range-eqI Abs-bset-inverse*[*symmetric*])  
**apply** (*rule* *range-eqI Abs-bset-inverse*[*symmetric*] *CollectI*) +  
 .

**lemma** *rel-bset-aux-infinite*:  
**fixes** *a* :: *'a* *set*[*'k*] **and** *b* :: *'b* *set*[*'k*]  
**shows**  $(\forall t \in \text{set-bset } a. \exists u \in \text{set-bset } b. R \ t \ u) \wedge (\forall u \in \text{set-bset } b. \exists t \in \text{set-bset } a. R \ t \ u) \longleftrightarrow$   
 $((\text{BNF-Def.Grp } \{a. \text{ set-bset } a \subseteq \{(a, b). R \ a \ b\}\} (\text{map-bset fst}))^{-1-1} \text{ OO}$   
 $\text{BNF-Def.Grp } \{a. \text{ set-bset } a \subseteq \{(a, b). R \ a \ b\}\} (\text{map-bset snd})) \ a \ b \text{ (is ?L } \longleftrightarrow$   
*?R)*

```

proof
  assume ?L
  define R' :: ('a × 'b) set['k]
    where R' = the-inv set-bset (Collect (case-prod R) ∩ (set-bset a × set-bset b))
      (is - = the-inv set-bset ?L')
  have |?L'| < o natLeq + c |UNIV :: 'k set|
    unfolding csum-def Field-natLeq
    by (intro ordLeq-ordLess-trans[OF card-of-mono1[OF Int-lower2]]
      card-of-Times-ordLess-infinite)
      (simp, (transfer, simp add: csum-def Field-natLeq)+)
  hence *: set-bset R' = ?L' unfolding R'-def by (intro set-bset-to-set-bset)
  show ?R unfolding Grp-def relcompp.simps conversep.simps
  proof (intro CollectI case-prodI exI[of - a] exI[of - b] exI[of - R'] conjI refl)
    from * show a = map-bset fst R' using conjunct1[OF ‹?L›]
      by (transfer, auto simp add: image-def Int-def split: prod.splits)
    from * show b = map-bset snd R' using conjunct2[OF ‹?L›]
      by (transfer, auto simp add: image-def Int-def split: prod.splits)
    qed (auto simp add: *)
  next
    assume ?R thus ?L unfolding Grp-def relcompp.simps conversep.simps
      by transfer force
  qed

bnf 'a set['k]
  map: map-bset
  sets: set-bset
  bd: natLeq + c card-suc |UNIV :: 'k set|
  wits: bempty
  rel: rel-bset
proof -
  show map-bset id = id by (rule ext, transfer) simp
next
  fix f g
  show map-bset (f o g) = map-bset f o map-bset g by (rule ext, transfer) auto
next
  fix X f g
  assume  $\bigwedge z. z \in \text{set-bset } X \implies f z = g z$ 
  then show map-bset f X = map-bset g X by transfer force
next
  fix f
  show set-bset o map-bset f = (') f o set-bset by (rule ext, transfer) auto
next
  fix X :: 'a set['k]
  have |set-bset X| < o natLeq + c |UNIV :: 'k set| by transfer blast
  then show |set-bset X| < o natLeq + c card-suc |UNIV :: 'k set|
    by (rule ordLess-ordLeq-trans[OF - csum-mono2[OF ordLess-imp-ordLeq[OF
      card-suc-greater[OF card-of-card-order-on]]]])
next
  fix R S

```

```

show rel-bset R OO rel-bset S ≤ rel-bset (R OO S)
  by (rule predicate2I, transfer) (auto simp: rel-set-OO[symmetric])
next
  fix R :: 'a ⇒ 'b ⇒ bool
  show rel-bset R = ((λx y. ∃ z. set-bset z ⊆ {(x, y). R x y} ∧
    map-bset fst z = x ∧ map-bset snd z = y) :: 'a set['k] ⇒ 'b set['k] ⇒ bool)
    by (simp add: rel-bset-def map-fun-def o-def rel-set-def
      rel-bset-aux-infinite[unfolded OO-Grp-alt])
next
  fix x
  assume x ∈ set-bset bempty
  then show False by transfer simp
qed (simp-all add: card-order-bd-fun Cinfinites-bd-fun regularCard-bd-fun)

lemma map-bset-bempty[simp]: map-bset f bempty = bempty
  by transfer auto

lemma map-bset-binsert[simp]: map-bset f (binsert x X) = binsert (f x) (map-bset
f X)
  by transfer auto

lemma map-bset-bsingleton: map-bset f (bsingleton x) = bsingleton (f x)
  unfolding bsingleton-def by simp

lemma bempty-not-binsert: bempty ≠ binsert x X binsert x X ≠ bempty
  by (transfer, auto)+

lemma bempty-not-bsingleton[simp]: bempty ≠ bsingleton x bsingleton x ≠ bempty
  unfolding bsingleton-def by (simp-all add: bempty-not-binsert)

lemma bsingleton-inj[simp]: bsingleton x = bsingleton y ⟷ x = y
  unfolding bsingleton-def by transfer auto

lemma rel-bsingleton[simp]:
  rel-bset R (bsingleton x1) (bsingleton x2) = R x1 x2
  unfolding bsingleton-def
  by transfer (auto simp: rel-set-def)

lemma rel-bset-bsingleton[simp]:
  rel-bset R (bsingleton x1) = (λX. X ≠ bempty ∧ (∀ x2 ∈ set-bset X. R x1 x2))
  rel-bset R X (bsingleton x2) = (X ≠ bempty ∧ (∀ x1 ∈ set-bset X. R x1 x2))
  unfolding bsingleton-def fun-eq-iff
  by (transfer, force simp add: rel-set-def)+

lemma rel-bset-bempty[simp]:
  rel-bset R bempty X = (X = bempty)
  rel-bset R Y bempty = (Y = bempty)
  by (transfer, simp add: rel-set-def)+

```

**definition** *bset-of-option* **where**

*bset-of-option* = *case-option bempty bsingleton*

**lift-definition** *bgraph* :: (*'a*  $\Rightarrow$  *'b option*)  $\Rightarrow$  (*'a*  $\times$  *'b*) *set* [*'a set*] **is**

$\lambda f. \{(a, b). f\ a = \text{Some } b\}$

**proof** –

**fix** *f* :: *'a*  $\Rightarrow$  *'b option*

**have**  $|\{(a, b). f\ a = \text{Some } b\}| \leq_o |UNIV :: 'a\ set|$

**by** (*rule surj-imp-ordLeq* [*of* -  $\lambda x. (x, \text{the } (f\ x))$ ]) *auto*

**also have**  $|UNIV :: 'a\ set| <_o |UNIV :: 'a\ set\ set|$

**by** *simp*

**also have**  $|UNIV :: 'a\ set\ set| \leq_o \text{natLeq} + c\ |UNIV :: 'a\ set\ set|$

**by** (*rule ordLeq-csum2*) *simp*

**finally show**  $|\{(a, b). f\ a = \text{Some } b\}| <_o \text{natLeq} + c\ |UNIV :: 'a\ set\ set|$  .

**qed**

**lemma** *rel-bset-False* [*simp*]: *rel-bset* ( $\lambda x\ y. \text{False}$ ) *x y* = (*x* = *bempty*  $\wedge$  *y* = *bempty*)

**by** *transfer* (*auto simp: rel-set-def*)

**lemma** *rel-bset-of-option* [*simp*]:

*rel-bset* *R* (*bset-of-option* *x1*) (*bset-of-option* *x2*) = *rel-option* *R* *x1* *x2*

**unfolding** *bset-of-option-def bsingleton-def* [*abs-def*]

**by** *transfer* (*auto simp: rel-set-def split: option.splits*)

**lemma** *rel-bgraph* [*simp*]:

*rel-bset* (*rel-prod* (=) *R*) (*bgraph* *f1*) (*bgraph* *f2*) = *rel-fun* (=) (*rel-option* *R*) *f1* *f2*

**apply** *transfer*

**apply** (*auto simp: rel-fun-def rel-option-iff rel-set-def split: option.splits*)

**using** *option.collapse* **apply** *fastforce* +

**done**

**lemma** *set-bset-bsingleton* [*simp*]:

*set-bset* (*bsingleton* *x*) = {*x*}

**unfolding** *bsingleton-def* **by** *transfer auto*

**lemma** *binsert-absorb* [*simp*]: *binsert* *a* (*binsert* *a* *x*) = *binsert* *a* *x*

**by** *transfer simp*

**lemma** *map-bset-eq-bempty-iff* [*simp*]: *map-bset* *f* *X* = *bempty*  $\longleftrightarrow$  *X* = *bempty*

**by** *transfer auto*

**lemma** *map-bset-eq-bsingleton-iff* [*simp*]:

*map-bset* *f* *X* = *bsingleton* *x*  $\longleftrightarrow$  (*set-bset* *X*  $\neq$  {*x*}  $\wedge$  ( $\forall y \in \text{set-bset } X. f\ y = x$ ))

**unfolding** *bsingleton-def* **by** *transfer auto*

**lift-definition** *bCollect* :: (*'a*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool*)  $\Rightarrow$  *'a set* [*'a set*] **is** *Collect*

**apply** (*rule ordLeq-ordLess-trans* [*OF card-of-mono1* [*OF subset-UNIV*]])

```

apply (rule ordLess-ordLeq-trans[OF card-of-set-type])
apply (rule ordLeq-csum2[OF card-of-Card-order])
done

lift-definition bmember :: 'a  $\Rightarrow$  'a set['k]  $\Rightarrow$  bool is ( $\in$ ) .

lemma bmember-bCollect[simp]: bmember a (bCollect P) = P a
  by transfer simp

lemma bset-eq-iff:  $A = B \longleftrightarrow (\forall a. \text{bmember } a \ A = \text{bmember } a \ B)$ 
  by transfer auto

locale bset-lifting
begin

declare bset.rel-eq[relator-eq]
declare bset.rel-mono[relator-mono]
declare bset.rel-compp[symmetric, relator-distr]
declare bset.rel-transfer[transfer-rule]

lemma bset-quot-map[quot-map]:  $\text{Quotient } R \text{ Abs Rep } T \implies$ 
   $\text{Quotient } (\text{rel-bset } R) (\text{map-bset Abs}) (\text{map-bset Rep}) (\text{rel-bset } T)$ 
  unfolding Quotient-alt-def5 bset.rel-Grp[of UNIV, simplified, symmetric]
    bset.rel-conversep[symmetric] bset.rel-compp[symmetric]
  by (auto elim: bset.rel-mono-strong)

lemma set-relator-eq-onp [relator-eq-onp]:
   $\text{rel-bset } (\text{eq-onp } P) = \text{eq-onp } (\lambda A. \text{Ball } (\text{set-bset } A) P)$ 
  unfolding fun-eq-iff eq-onp-def by transfer (auto simp: rel-set-def)

end

end

```